



ENGINEERING-PDH.com
ONLINE CONTINUING EDUCATION

MANUAL ON UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES PART 4: HWY TRAFFIC SIGNALS

Main Category:	Civil Engineering
Sub Category:	Traffic Engineering
Course #:	TRA-116
Course Content:	136 pgs
PDH/CE Hours:	9

COURSE/EXAM PREVIEW

(HIT BACK TO RETURN TO ENGINEERING-PDH.COM)

WWW.ENGINEERING-PDH.COM

TOLL FREE (US & CA): 1-833-ENGR-PDH (1-833-364-7734)

SUPPORT@ENGINEERING-PDH.COM

TRA-116 EXAM PREVIEW

- TAKE EXAM! -

Instructions:

- At your convenience and own pace, review the course material below. When ready, click “Take Exam!” above to complete the live graded exam. (Note it may take a few seconds for the link to pull up the exam.) You will be able to re-take the exam as many times as needed to pass.
- Upon a satisfactory completion of the course exam, which is a score of 70% or better, you will be provided with your course completion certificate. Be sure to download and print your certificates to keep for your records.

Exam Preview:

1. An engineering study of traffic conditions, pedestrian characteristics, and physical characteristics of the location shall be performed to determine whether installation of a traffic control signal is justified at a particular location.
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. The investigation of the need for a traffic control signal shall include an analysis of factors related to the existing operation and safety at the study location and the potential to improve these conditions, and the applicable factors contained in the following traffic signal warrants. A Coordinated Signal System is Warrant#:
 - a. 1
 - b. 3
 - c. 4
 - d. 6
3. For Warrant#1, the need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that one of the following conditions exist for each of any ____ hours of an avg day.
 - a. 4
 - b. 6
 - c. 8
 - d. 10
4. In applying each condition for Warrant#1, the major-street and minor-street volumes shall be for the same number of hours.
 - a. True
 - b. False

5. For Warrant#3, this signal warrant shall be applied only in unusual cases, such as office complexes, manufacturing plants, industrial complexes, or high-occupancy vehicle facilities that attract or discharge large numbers of vehicles over a short time.
 - a. True
 - b. False
6. For Warrant#4, Pedestrian Volume, The need for a traffic control signal at an intersection or midblock crossing shall be considered if an engineering study finds that for a ½ hour (any 2 consecutive 15-minute periods) of an average day, the plotted point representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding pedestrians per hour crossing the major street (total of all crossings) falls above the curve in Figure 4C-7.
 - a. True
 - b. False
7. The Pedestrian Volume signal warrant shall not be applied at locations where the distance to the nearest traffic control signal or STOP sign controlling the street that pedestrians desire to cross is less than ____ feet, unless the proposed traffic control signal will not restrict the progressive movement of traffic.
 - a. 200
 - b. 300
 - c. 500
 - d. 600
8. For Warrant 7, Crash Experience, the need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that this single criterion is met: Adequate trial of alternatives with satisfactory observance and enforcement has failed to reduce the crash frequency.
 - a. True
 - b. False
9. For Warrant 8, Roadway Network, a ____ as used in this signal warrant shall have at least one of the following characteristics: (A) It is part of the street or highway system that serves as the principal roadway network for through traffic. (B) It includes rural or suburban highways outside, entering, or traversing a city. (C) It appears as a major route on an official plan, such as a major street plan in an urban area traffic and transportation study.
 - a. Grade crossing
 - b. Major route
 - c. Minor route
 - d. Yield sign
10. In-Roadway Lights are a special type of highway traffic signals. If used, they shall not exceed a height of 3/4 inch above the roadway surface.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

for Streets and Highways

2009 Edition

PART 4: HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS



The Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) is approved by the Federal Highway Administrator as the National Standard in accordance with Title 23 U.S. Code, Sections 109(d), 114(a), 217, 315, and 402(a), 23 CFR 655, and 49 CFR 1.48(b)(8), 1.48(b)(33), and 1.48(c)(2).

Addresses for Publications Referenced in the MUTCD

American Automobile Association (AAA)
1000 AAA Drive
Heathrow, FL 32746
www.aaa.com
800-222-4357

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)
444 North Capitol Street, NW, Suite 249
Washington, DC 20001
www.transportation.org
202-624-5800

American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
1819 L Street, NW, 6th Floor
Washington, DC 20036
www.ansi.org
202-293-8020

American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA)
10003 Derekwood Lane, Suite 210
Lanham, MD 20706
www.arema.org
301-459-3200

Federal Highway Administration Report Center
Facsimile number: 814-239-2156
report.center@fhwa.dot.gov

Illuminating Engineering Society (IES)
120 Wall Street, Floor 17
New York, NY 10005
www.iesna.org
212-248-5000

Institute of Makers of Explosives
1120 19th Street, NW, Suite 310
Washington, DC 20036-3605
www.ime.org
202-429-9280

Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE)
1099 14th Street, NW, Suite 300 West
Washington, DC 20005-3438
www.ite.org
202-289-0222

International Organization for Standardization
1, ch. de la Voie-Creuse
Case Postale 56
CH-1211
Geneva 20, Switzerland
www.iso.ch
011-41-22-749-0111

International Safety Equipment Association (ISEA)
1901 North Moore Street, Suite 808
Arlington, VA 22209
www.safetyequipment.org
703-525-1695

National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances (NCUTLO)
107 South West Street, Suite 110
Alexandria, VA 22314
www.ncutlo.org
800-807-5290

National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1752
Rosslyn, VA 22209
www.nema.org
703-841-3200

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, NW
Washington, DC 20210
www.osha.gov
800-321-6742

Transportation Research Board (TRB)
The National Academies
500 Fifth Street, NW
Washington, DC 20001
www.nas.edu/trb
202-334-3072

U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (The U.S. Access Board)
1331 F Street, NW, Suite 1000
Washington, DC 20004-1111
www.access-board.gov
202-272-0080

Acknowledgments

The Federal Highway Administration gratefully acknowledges the valuable assistance that it received from the National Committee on Uniform Traffic Control Devices and its more than 250 voluntary members in the development of this Manual.

MANUAL ON UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
INTRODUCTION.....	I-1
 PART 1. GENERAL	
<u>CHAPTER 1A. GENERAL</u>	
Section 1A.01 Purpose of Traffic Control Devices.....	1
Section 1A.02 Principles of Traffic Control Devices.....	1
Section 1A.03 Design of Traffic Control Devices.....	1
Section 1A.04 Placement and Operation of Traffic Control Devices.....	2
Section 1A.05 Maintenance of Traffic Control Devices	2
Section 1A.06 Uniformity of Traffic Control Devices.....	2
Section 1A.07 Responsibility for Traffic Control Devices.....	2
Section 1A.08 Authority for Placement of Traffic Control Devices	3
Section 1A.09 Engineering Study and Engineering Judgment	4
Section 1A.10 Interpretations, Experimentations, Changes, and Interim Approvals	4
Section 1A.11 Relation to Other Publications	7
Section 1A.12 Color Code	10
Section 1A.13 Definitions of Headings, Words, and Phrases in this Manual	10
Section 1A.14 Meanings of Acronyms and Abbreviations in this Manual.....	23
Section 1A.15 Abbreviations Used on Traffic Control Devices.....	24
 PART 2. SIGNS	
<u>CHAPTER 2A. GENERAL</u>	
Section 2A.01 Function and Purpose of Signs	27
Section 2A.02 Definitions.....	27
Section 2A.03 Standardization of Application	27
Section 2A.04 Excessive Use of Signs.....	27
Section 2A.05 Classification of Signs	28
Section 2A.06 Design of Signs	28
Section 2A.07 Retroreflectivity and Illumination.....	29
Section 2A.08 Maintaining Minimum Retroreflectivity.....	30
Section 2A.09 Shapes	32
Section 2A.10 Sign Colors.....	32
Section 2A.11 Dimensions.....	32
Section 2A.12 Symbols.....	34
Section 2A.13 Word Messages	35
Section 2A.14 Sign Borders.....	36
Section 2A.15 Enhanced Conspicuity for Standard Signs.....	36
Section 2A.16 Standardization of Location.....	37
Section 2A.17 Overhead Sign Installations	41
Section 2A.18 Mounting Height	42
Section 2A.19 Lateral Offset	43
Section 2A.20 Orientation	43
Section 2A.21 Posts and Mountings	44
Section 2A.22 Maintenance.....	44
Section 2A.23 Median Opening Treatments for Divided Highways with Wide Medians	44

CHAPTER 2B. REGULATORY SIGNS, BARRICADES, AND GATES

Section 2B.01	Application of Regulatory Signs	45
Section 2B.02	Design of Regulatory Signs.....	45
Section 2B.03	Size of Regulatory Signs	45
Section 2B.04	Right-of-Way at Intersections.....	49
Section 2B.05	STOP Sign (R1-1) and ALL WAY Plaque (R1-3P)	51
Section 2B.06	STOP Sign Applications.....	52
Section 2B.07	Multi-Way Stop Applications	52
Section 2B.08	YIELD Sign (R1-2)	53
Section 2B.09	YIELD Sign Applications	53
Section 2B.10	STOP Sign or YIELD Sign Placement.....	53
Section 2B.11	Yield Here To Pedestrians Signs and Stop Here For Pedestrians Signs (R1-5 Series)	54
Section 2B.12	In-Street and Overhead Pedestrian Crossing Signs (R1-6, R1-6a, R1-9, and R1-9a).....	55
Section 2B.13	Speed Limit Sign (R2-1)	56
Section 2B.14	Truck Speed Limit Plaque (R2-2P).....	58
Section 2B.15	Night Speed Limit Plaque (R2-3P).....	58
Section 2B.16	Minimum Speed Limit Plaque (R2-4P)	59
Section 2B.17	Higher Fines Signs and Plaque (R2-6P, R2-10, and R2-11)	59
Section 2B.18	Movement Prohibition Signs (R3-1 through R3-4, R3-18, and R3-27).....	60
Section 2B.19	Intersection Lane Control Signs (R3-5 through R3-8).....	61
Section 2B.20	Mandatory Movement Lane Control Signs (R3-5, R3-5a, R3-7, and R3-20)	62
Section 2B.21	Optional Movement Lane Control Sign (R3-6).....	63
Section 2B.22	Advance Intersection Lane Control Signs (R3-8 Series).....	64
Section 2B.23	RIGHT (LEFT) LANE MUST EXIT Sign (R3-33)	64
Section 2B.24	Two-Way Left Turn Only Signs (R3-9a, R3-9b)	64
Section 2B.25	BEGIN and END Plaques (R3-9cP, R3-9dP).....	64
Section 2B.26	Reversible Lane Control Signs (R3-9e through R3-9i)	65
Section 2B.27	Jughandle Signs (R3-23, R3-24, R3-25, and R3-26 Series).....	67
Section 2B.28	DO NOT PASS Sign (R4-1)	72
Section 2B.29	PASS WITH CARE Sign (R4-2)	73
Section 2B.30	KEEP RIGHT EXCEPT TO PASS Sign (R4-16) and SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT Sign (R4-3).....	73
Section 2B.31	TRUCKS USE RIGHT LANE Sign (R4-5).....	73
Section 2B.32	Keep Right and Keep Left Signs (R4-7, R4-8).....	73
Section 2B.33	STAY IN LANE Sign (R4-9).....	74
Section 2B.34	RUNAWAY VEHICLES ONLY Sign (R4-10).....	74
Section 2B.35	Slow Vehicle Turn-Out Signs (R4-12, R4-13, and R4-14)	74
Section 2B.36	DO NOT DRIVE ON SHOULDER Sign (R4-17) and DO NOT PASS ON SHOULDER Sign (R4-18)	75
Section 2B.37	DO NOT ENTER Sign (R5-1)	75
Section 2B.38	WRONG WAY Sign (R5-1a).....	76
Section 2B.39	Selective Exclusion Signs	76
Section 2B.40	ONE WAY Signs (R6-1, R6-2).....	77
Section 2B.41	Wrong-Way Traffic Control at Interchange Ramps	79
Section 2B.42	Divided Highway Crossing Signs (R6-3, R6-3a)	82
Section 2B.43	Roundabout Directional Arrow Signs (R6-4, R6-4a, and R6-4b).....	84
Section 2B.44	Roundabout Circulation Plaque (R6-5P)	84
Section 2B.45	Examples of Roundabout Signing	84
Section 2B.46	Parking, Standing, and Stopping Signs (R7 and R8 Series)	88
Section 2B.47	Design of Parking, Standing, and Stopping Signs.....	89
Section 2B.48	Placement of Parking, Stopping, and Standing Signs	92
Section 2B.49	Emergency Restriction Signs (R8-4, R8-7, R8-8).....	92
Section 2B.50	WALK ON LEFT FACING TRAFFIC and No Hitchhiking Signs (R9-1, R9-4, R9-4a)	92

Section 2B.51	Pedestrian Crossing Signs (R9-2, R9-3).....	92
Section 2B.52	Traffic Signal Pedestrian and Bicycle Actuation Signs (R10-1 through R10-4, and R10-24 through R10-26)	94
Section 2B.53	Traffic Signal Signs (R10-5 through R10-30).....	95
Section 2B.54	No Turn on Red Signs (R10-11 Series, R10-17a, and R10-30)	95
Section 2B.55	Photo Enforced Signs and Plaques (R10-18, R10-19P, R10-19aP).....	97
Section 2B.56	Ramp Metering Signs (R10-28 and R10-29)	97
Section 2B.57	KEEP OFF MEDIAN Sign (R11-1)	97
Section 2B.58	ROAD CLOSED Sign (R11-2) and LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY Signs (R11-3 Series, R11-4) ...	98
Section 2B.59	Weight Limit Signs (R12-1 through R12-5)	98
Section 2B.60	Weigh Station Signs (R13 Series).....	99
Section 2B.61	TRUCK ROUTE Sign (R14-1).....	99
Section 2B.62	Hazardous Material Signs (R14-2, R14-3).....	99
Section 2B.63	National Network Signs (R14-4, R14-5)	100
Section 2B.64	Headlight Use Signs (R16-5 through R16-11)	100
Section 2B.65	FENDER BENDER Sign (R16-4)	101
Section 2B.66	Seat Belt Symbol	101
Section 2B.67	Barricades	101
Section 2B.68	Gates	101

CHAPTER 2C. WARNING SIGNS AND OBJECT MARKERS

Section 2C.01	Function of Warning Signs.....	103
Section 2C.02	Application of Warning Signs	103
Section 2C.03	Design of Warning Signs	103
Section 2C.04	Size of Warning Signs.....	103
Section 2C.05	Placement of Warning Signs	108
Section 2C.06	Horizontal Alignment Warning Signs.....	109
Section 2C.07	Horizontal Alignment Signs (W1-1 through W1-5, W1-11, W1-15)	110
Section 2C.08	Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P).....	112
Section 2C.09	Chevron Alignment Sign (W1-8)	112
Section 2C.10	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed Signs (W1-1a, W1-2a)	113
Section 2C.11	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection Signs (W1-10 Series)	113
Section 2C.12	One-Direction Large Arrow Sign (W1-6).....	113
Section 2C.13	Truck Rollover Warning Sign (W1-13).....	114
Section 2C.14	Advisory Exit and Ramp Speed Signs (W13-2 and W13-3).....	114
Section 2C.15	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Exit and Ramp Speed Signs (W13-6 and W13-7).....	115
Section 2C.16	Hill Signs (W7-1, W7-1a)	115
Section 2C.17	Truck Escape Ramp Signs (W7-4 Series)	115
Section 2C.18	HILL BLOCKS VIEW Sign (W7-6)	117
Section 2C.19	ROAD NARROWS Sign (W5-1).....	117
Section 2C.20	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2).....	118
Section 2C.21	ONE LANE BRIDGE Sign (W5-3)	118
Section 2C.22	Divided Highway Sign (W6-1)	119
Section 2C.23	Divided Highway Ends Sign (W6-2).....	119
Section 2C.24	Freeway or Expressway Ends Signs (W19 Series).....	119
Section 2C.25	Double Arrow Sign (W12-1)	119
Section 2C.26	DEAD END/NO OUTLET Signs (W14-1, W14-1a, W14-2, W14-2a)	119
Section 2C.27	Low Clearance Signs (W12-2 and W12-2a)	120
Section 2C.28	BUMP and DIP Signs (W8-1, W8-2)	120
Section 2C.29	SPEED HUMP Sign (W17-1).....	120
Section 2C.30	PAVEMENT ENDS Sign (W8-3)	122
Section 2C.31	Shoulder Signs (W8-4, W8-9, W8-17, W8-23, and W8-25).....	122
Section 2C.32	Surface Condition Signs (W8-5, W8-7, W8-8, W8-11, W8-13, and W8-14).....	122

Section 2C.33	Warning Signs and Plaques for Motorcyclists (W8-15, W8-15P, and W8-16).....	123
Section 2C.34	NO CENTER LINE Sign (W8-12)	123
Section 2C.35	Weather Condition Signs (W8-18, W8-19, W8-21, and W8-22)	123
Section 2C.36	Advance Traffic Control Signs (W3-1, W3-2, W3-3, W3-4)	123
Section 2C.37	Advance Ramp Control Signal Signs (W3-7 and W3-8)	124
Section 2C.38	Reduced Speed Limit Ahead Signs (W3-5, W3-5a)	124
Section 2C.39	DRAW BRIDGE Sign (W3-6).....	125
Section 2C.40	Merge Signs (W4-1, W4-5).....	125
Section 2C.41	Added Lane Signs (W4-3, W4-6)	126
Section 2C.42	Lane Ends Signs (W4-2, W9-1, W9-2)	126
Section 2C.43	RIGHT (LEFT) LANE EXIT ONLY AHEAD Sign (W9-7)	126
Section 2C.44	Two-Way Traffic Sign (W6-3)	127
Section 2C.45	NO PASSING ZONE Sign (W14-3).....	127
Section 2C.46	Intersection Warning Signs (W2-1 through W2-8)	127
Section 2C.47	Two-Direction Large Arrow Sign (W1-7)	128
Section 2C.48	Traffic Signal Signs (W25-1, W25-2)	128
Section 2C.49	Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs (W8-6, W11-1, W11-5, W11-5a, W11-8, W11-10, W11-11, W11-12P, W11-14, W11-15, and W11-15a)	128
Section 2C.50	Non-Vehicular Warning Signs (W11-2, W11-3, W11-4, W11-6, W11-7, W11-9, and W11-16 through W11-22).....	130
Section 2C.51	Playground Sign (W15-1)	131
Section 2C.52	NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD Sign (W23-2)	131
Section 2C.53	Use of Supplemental Warning Plaques	131
Section 2C.54	Design of Supplemental Warning Plaques	132
Section 2C.55	Distance Plaques (W16-2 Series, W16-3 Series, W16-4P, W7-3aP).....	132
Section 2C.56	Supplemental Arrow Plaques (W16-5P, W16-6P).....	132
Section 2C.57	Hill-Related Plaques (W7-2 Series, W7-3 Series)	133
Section 2C.58	Advance Street Name Plaque (W16-8P, W16-8aP).....	133
Section 2C.59	CROSS TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP Plaque (W4-4P)	133
Section 2C.60	SHARE THE ROAD Plaque (W16-1P)	133
Section 2C.61	Photo Enforced Plaque (W16-10P).....	134
Section 2C.62	NEW Plaque (W16-15P)	134
Section 2C.63	Object Marker Design and Placement Height	134
Section 2C.64	Object Markers for Obstructions Within the Roadway	135
Section 2C.65	Object Markers for Obstructions Adjacent to the Roadway	135
Section 2C.66	Object Markers for Ends of Roadways.....	136

CHAPTER 2D. GUIDE SIGNS—CONVENTIONAL ROADS

Section 2D.01	Scope of Conventional Road Guide Sign Standards	137
Section 2D.02	Application.....	137
Section 2D.03	Color, Retroreflection, and Illumination	137
Section 2D.04	Size of Signs.....	137
Section 2D.05	Lettering Style.....	138
Section 2D.06	Size of Lettering.....	138
Section 2D.07	Amount of Legend	140
Section 2D.08	Arrows.....	140
Section 2D.09	Numbered Highway Systems	142
Section 2D.10	Route Signs and Auxiliary Signs	142
Section 2D.11	Design of Route Signs	143
Section 2D.12	Design of Route Sign Auxiliaries.....	144
Section 2D.13	Junction Auxiliary Sign (M2-1)	144
Section 2D.14	Combination Junction Sign (M2-2).....	145
Section 2D.15	Cardinal Direction Auxiliary Signs (M3-1 through M3-4)	145
Section 2D.16	Auxiliary Signs for Alternative Routes (M4 Series)	145

Section 2D.17	ALTERNATE Auxiliary Signs (M4-1, M4-1a).....	145
Section 2D.18	BY-PASS Auxiliary Sign (M4-2)	146
Section 2D.19	BUSINESS Auxiliary Sign (M4-3).....	146
Section 2D.20	TRUCK Auxiliary Sign (M4-4).....	146
Section 2D.21	TO Auxiliary Sign (M4-5).....	146
Section 2D.22	END Auxiliary Sign (M4-6).....	146
Section 2D.23	BEGIN Auxiliary Sign (M4-14).....	146
Section 2D.24	TEMPORARY Auxiliary Signs (M4-7, M4-7a).....	147
Section 2D.25	Temporary Detour and Auxiliary Signs.....	147
Section 2D.26	Advance Turn Arrow Auxiliary Signs (M5-1, M5-2, and M5-3).....	147
Section 2D.27	Lane Designation Auxiliary Signs (M5-4, M5-5, and M5-6).....	148
Section 2D.28	Directional Arrow Auxiliary Signs (M6 Series).....	148
Section 2D.29	Route Sign Assemblies.....	148
Section 2D.30	Junction Assembly	153
Section 2D.31	Advance Route Turn Assembly	153
Section 2D.32	Directional Assembly	153
Section 2D.33	Combination Lane-Use/Destination Overhead Guide Sign (D15-1).....	154
Section 2D.34	Confirming or Reassurance Assemblies	155
Section 2D.35	Trailblazer Assembly	155
Section 2D.36	Destination and Distance Signs.....	156
Section 2D.37	Destination Signs (D1 Series).....	156
Section 2D.38	Destination Signs at Circular Intersections	157
Section 2D.39	Destination Signs at Jughandles.....	158
Section 2D.40	Location of Destination Signs	158
Section 2D.41	Distance Signs (D2 Series).....	161
Section 2D.42	Location of Distance Signs	161
Section 2D.43	Street Name Signs (D3-1 or D3-1a).....	161
Section 2D.44	Advance Street Name Signs (D3-2)	163
Section 2D.45	Signing on Conventional Roads on Approaches to Interchanges	164
Section 2D.46	Freeway Entrance Signs (D13-3 and D13-3a).....	170
Section 2D.47	Parking Area Guide Sign (D4-1).....	171
Section 2D.48	PARK - RIDE Sign (D4-2)	171
Section 2D.49	Weigh Station Signing (D8 Series).....	172
Section 2D.50	Community Wayfinding Signs	172
Section 2D.51	Truck, Passing, or Climbing Lane Signs (D17-1 and D17-2)	178
Section 2D.52	Slow Vehicle Turn-Out Sign (D17-7).....	178
Section 2D.53	Signing of Named Highways.....	179
Section 2D.54	Crossover Signs (D13-1 and D13-2)	179
Section 2D.55	National Scenic Byways Signs (D6-4, D6-4a).....	179

CHAPTER 2E. GUIDE SIGNS—FREEWAYS AND EXPRESSWAYS

Section 2E.01	Scope of Freeway and Expressway Guide Sign Standards.....	181
Section 2E.02	Freeway and Expressway Signing Principles	181
Section 2E.03	Guide Sign Classification	181
Section 2E.04	General.....	182
Section 2E.05	Color of Guide Signs.....	182
Section 2E.06	Retroreflection or Illumination.....	182
Section 2E.07	Characteristics of Urban Signing	182
Section 2E.08	Characteristics of Rural Signing	183
Section 2E.09	Signing of Named Highways.....	183
Section 2E.10	Amount of Legend on Guide Signs.....	183
Section 2E.11	Number of Signs at an Overhead Installation and Sign Spreading	183
Section 2E.12	Pull-Through Signs (E6-2, E6-2a).....	184
Section 2E.13	Designation of Destinations	184

Section 2E.14	Size and Style of Letters and Signs.....	185
Section 2E.15	Interline and Edge Spacing	185
Section 2E.16	Sign Borders.....	192
Section 2E.17	Abbreviations	192
Section 2E.18	Symbols.....	192
Section 2E.19	Arrows for Interchange Guide Signs.....	192
Section 2E.20	Signing for Option Lanes at Splits and Multi-Lane Exits	193
Section 2E.21	Design of Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for Option Lanes	193
Section 2E.22	Design of Freeway and Expressway Diagrammatic Guide Signs for Option Lanes	198
Section 2E.23	Signing for Intermediate and Minor Interchange Multi-Lane Exits with an Option Lane.....	203
Section 2E.24	Signing for Interchange Lane Drops	203
Section 2E.25	Overhead Sign Installations	206
Section 2E.26	Lateral Offset	210
Section 2E.27	Route Signs and Trailblazer Assemblies	210
Section 2E.28	Eisenhower Interstate System Signs (M1-10, M1-10a)	211
Section 2E.29	Signs for Intersections at Grade	211
Section 2E.30	Interchange Guide Signs	211
Section 2E.31	Interchange Exit Numbering	212
Section 2E.32	Interchange Classification	216
Section 2E.33	Advance Guide Signs	216
Section 2E.34	Next Exit Plaques	218
Section 2E.35	Other Supplemental Guide Signs	218
Section 2E.36	Exit Direction Signs	220
Section 2E.37	Exit Gore Signs (E5-1 Series)	222
Section 2E.38	Post-Interchange Signs	222
Section 2E.39	Post-Interchange Distance Signs	223
Section 2E.40	Interchange Sequence Signs.....	223
Section 2E.41	Community Interchanges Identification Signs	225
Section 2E.42	NEXT XX EXITS Sign	225
Section 2E.43	Signing by Type of Interchange	226
Section 2E.44	Freeway-to-Freeway Interchange	226
Section 2E.45	Cloverleaf Interchange	226
Section 2E.46	Cloverleaf Interchange with Collector-Distributor Roadways.....	230
Section 2E.47	Partial Cloverleaf Interchange.....	230
Section 2E.48	Diamond Interchange.....	230
Section 2E.49	Diamond Interchange in Urban Area	234
Section 2E.50	Closely-Spaced Interchanges.....	234
Section 2E.51	Minor Interchange.....	234
Section 2E.52	Signing on Conventional Road Approaches and Connecting Roadways.....	235
Section 2E.53	Wrong-Way Traffic Control at Interchange Ramps	235
Section 2E.54	Weigh Station Signing.....	236

CHAPTER 2F. TOLL ROAD SIGNS

Section 2F.01	Scope.....	237
Section 2F.02	Sizes of Toll Road Signs.....	237
Section 2F.03	Use of Purple Backgrounds and Underlay Panels with ETC Account Pictographs	238
Section 2F.04	Size of ETC Pictographs	238
Section 2F.05	Regulatory Signs for Toll Plazas	238
Section 2F.06	Pay Toll Advance Warning Sign (W9-6)	240
Section 2F.07	Pay Toll Advance Warning Plaque (W9-6P).....	241
Section 2F.08	Stop Ahead Pay Toll Warning Sign (W9-6a)	242
Section 2F.09	Stop Ahead Pay Toll Warning Plaque (W9-6aP)	242
Section 2F.10	LAST EXIT BEFORE TOLL Warning Plaque (W16-16P).....	242
Section 2F.11	TOLL Auxiliary Sign (M4-15)	242

Section 2F.12	Electronic Toll Collection (ETC) Account-Only Auxiliary Signs (M4-16 and M4-20).....	243
Section 2F.13	Toll Facility and Toll Plaza Guide Signs – General	243
Section 2F.14	Advance Signs for Conventional Toll Plazas.....	248
Section 2F.15	Advance Signs for Toll Plazas on Diverging Alignments from Open-Road ETC Account-Only Lanes	249
Section 2F.16	Toll Plaza Canopy Signs.....	252
Section 2F.17	Guide Signs for Entrances to ETC Account-Only Facilities	252
Section 2F.18	ETC Program Information Signs	252

CHAPTER 2G. PREFERENTIAL AND MANAGED LANE SIGNS

Section 2G.01	Scope.....	253
Section 2G.02	Sizes of Preferential and Managed Lane Signs	253
Section 2G.03	Regulatory Signs for Preferential Lanes – General.....	253
Section 2G.04	Preferential Lane Vehicle Occupancy Definition Regulatory Signs (R3-10 Series and R3-13 Series)	258
Section 2G.05	Preferential Lane Periods of Operation Regulatory Signs (R3-11 Series and R3-14 Series)...	259
Section 2G.06	Preferential Lane Advance Regulatory Signs (R3-12, R3-12e, R3-12f, R3-15, R3-15a, and R3-15d).....	263
Section 2G.07	Preferential Lane Ends Regulatory Signs (R3-12a, R3-12b, R3-12c, R3-12d, R3-12g, R3-12h, R3-15b, R3-15c, and R3-15e).....	263
Section 2G.08	Warning Signs on Median Barriers for Preferential Lanes	263
Section 2G.09	High-Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) Plaque (W16-11P)	264
Section 2G.10	Preferential Lane Guide Signs – General.....	265
Section 2G.11	Guide Signs for Initial Entry Points to Preferential Lanes.....	267
Section 2G.12	Guide Signs for Intermediate Entry Points to Preferential Lanes	268
Section 2G.13	Guide Signs for Egress from Preferential Lanes to General-Purpose Lanes	270
Section 2G.14	Guide Signs for Direct Entrances to Preferential Lanes from Another Highway	273
Section 2G.15	Guide Signs for Direct Exits from Preferential Lanes to Another Highway	273
Section 2G.16	Signs for Priced Managed Lanes – General.....	276
Section 2G.17	Regulatory Signs for Priced Managed Lanes.....	279
Section 2G.18	Guide Signs for Priced Managed Lanes.....	279

CHAPTER 2H. GENERAL INFORMATION SIGNS

Section 2H.01	Sizes of General Information Signs	292
Section 2H.02	General Information Signs (I Series).....	292
Section 2H.03	Traffic Signal Speed Sign (I1-1)	294
Section 2H.04	Miscellaneous Information Signs.....	294
Section 2H.05	Reference Location Signs (D10-1 through D10-3) and Intermediate Reference Location Signs (D10-1a through D10-3a)	294
Section 2H.06	Enhanced Reference Location Signs (D10-4, D10-5).....	296
Section 2H.07	Auto Tour Route Signs	297
Section 2H.08	Acknowledgment Signs.....	297

CHAPTER 2I. GENERAL SERVICE SIGNS

Section 2I.01	Sizes of General Service Signs.....	299
Section 2I.02	General Service Signs for Conventional Roads.....	300
Section 2I.03	General Service Signs for Freeways and Expressways	303
Section 2I.04	Interstate Oasis Signing.....	306
Section 2I.05	Rest Area and Other Roadside Area Signs.....	307
Section 2I.06	Brake Check Area Signs (D5-13 and D5-14)	308
Section 2I.07	Chain-Up Area Signs (D5-15 and D5-16)	308
Section 2I.08	Tourist Information and Welcome Center Signs	308
Section 2I.09	Radio Information Signing.....	310
Section 2I.10	TRAVEL INFO CALL 511 Signs (D12-5 and D12-5a).....	311
Section 2I.11	Carpool and Ridesharing Signing.....	311

CHAPTER 2J. SPECIFIC SERVICE SIGNS

Section 2J.01	Eligibility	312
Section 2J.02	Application.....	313
Section 2J.03	Logos and Logo Sign Panels	313
Section 2J.04	Number and Size of Signs and Logo Sign Panels	317
Section 2J.05	Size of Lettering.....	317
Section 2J.06	Signs at Interchanges.....	317
Section 2J.07	Single-Exit Interchanges	317
Section 2J.08	Double-Exit Interchanges.....	318
Section 2J.09	Specific Service Trailblazer Signs.....	318
Section 2J.10	Signs at Intersections.....	319
Section 2J.11	Signing Policy	319

CHAPTER 2K. TOURIST-ORIENTED DIRECTIONAL SIGNS

Section 2K.01	Purpose and Application	320
Section 2K.02	Design	320
Section 2K.03	Style and Size of Lettering.....	323
Section 2K.04	Arrangement and Size of Signs.....	323
Section 2K.05	Advance Signs.....	323
Section 2K.06	Sign Locations.....	324
Section 2K.07	State Policy.....	324

CHAPTER 2L. CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGNS

Section 2L.01	Description of Changeable Message Signs.....	325
Section 2L.02	Applications of Changeable Message Signs	325
Section 2L.03	Legibility and Visibility of Changeable Message Signs.....	326
Section 2L.04	Design Characteristics of Changeable Message Signs	326
Section 2L.05	Message Length and Units of Information.....	328
Section 2L.06	Installation of Permanent Changeable Message Signs	329

CHAPTER 2M. RECREATIONAL AND CULTURAL INTEREST AREA SIGNS

Section 2M.01	Scope.....	330
Section 2M.02	Application of Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Signs	330
Section 2M.03	Regulatory and Warning Signs	330
Section 2M.04	General Design Requirements for Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Guide Signs	330
Section 2M.05	Symbol Sign Sizes.....	332
Section 2M.06	Use of Educational Plaques	332
Section 2M.07	Use of Prohibitive Circle and Diagonal Slash for Non-Road Applications	332
Section 2M.08	Placement of Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs.....	332
Section 2M.09	Destination Guide Signs.....	333
Section 2M.10	Memorial or Dedication Signing.....	339

CHAPTER 2N. EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT SIGNING

Section 2N.01	Emergency Management.....	342
Section 2N.02	Design of Emergency Management Signs.....	342
Section 2N.03	Evacuation Route Signs (EM-1 and EM-1a).....	342
Section 2N.04	AREA CLOSED Sign (EM-2)	344
Section 2N.05	TRAFFIC CONTROL POINT Sign (EM-3)	344
Section 2N.06	MAINTAIN TOP SAFE SPEED Sign (EM-4)	344
Section 2N.07	ROAD (AREA) USE PERMIT REQUIRED FOR THRU TRAFFIC Sign (EM-5)	345
Section 2N.08	Emergency Aid Center Signs (EM-6 Series).....	345
Section 2N.09	Shelter Directional Signs (EM-7 Series)	346

PART 3. MARKINGS

CHAPTER 3A. GENERAL

Section 3A.01	Functions and Limitations.....	347
Section 3A.02	Standardization of Application	347
Section 3A.03	Maintaining Minimum Pavement Marking Retroreflectivity	347
Section 3A.04	Materials	347
Section 3A.05	Colors	348
Section 3A.06	Functions, Widths, and Patterns of Longitudinal Pavement Markings	348

CHAPTER 3B. PAVEMENT AND CURB MARKINGS

Section 3B.01	Yellow Center Line Pavement Markings and Warrants	349
Section 3B.02	No-Passing Zone Pavement Markings and Warrants	352
Section 3B.03	Other Yellow Longitudinal Pavement Markings	354
Section 3B.04	White Lane Line Pavement Markings and Warrants	356
Section 3B.05	Other White Longitudinal Pavement Markings	370
Section 3B.06	Edge Line Pavement Markings	371
Section 3B.07	Warrants for Use of Edge Lines	371
Section 3B.08	Extensions Through Intersections or Interchanges	371
Section 3B.09	Lane-Reduction Transition Markings	374
Section 3B.10	Approach Markings for Obstructions.....	376
Section 3B.11	Raised Pavement Markers – General	376
Section 3B.12	Raised Pavement Markers as Vehicle Positioning Guides with Other Longitudinal Markings	379
Section 3B.13	Raised Pavement Markers Supplementing Other Markings.....	379
Section 3B.14	Raised Pavement Markers Substituting for Pavement Markings.....	380
Section 3B.15	Transverse Markings.....	381
Section 3B.16	Stop and Yield Lines.....	381
Section 3B.17	Do Not Block Intersection Markings	382
Section 3B.18	Crosswalk Markings	383
Section 3B.19	Parking Space Markings	385
Section 3B.20	Pavement Word, Symbol, and Arrow Markings.....	387
Section 3B.21	Speed Measurement Markings.....	393
Section 3B.22	Speed Reduction Markings	393
Section 3B.23	Curb Markings	394
Section 3B.24	Chevron and Diagonal Crosshatch Markings.....	395
Section 3B.25	Speed Hump Markings	395
Section 3B.26	Advance Speed Hump Markings	395

CHAPTER 3C. ROUNDABOUT MARKINGS

Section 3C.01	General	399
Section 3C.02	White Lane Line Pavement Markings for Roundabouts	413
Section 3C.03	Edge Line Pavement Markings for Roundabout Circulatory Roadways	413
Section 3C.04	Yield Lines for Roundabouts.....	413
Section 3C.05	Crosswalk Markings at Roundabouts.....	413
Section 3C.06	Word, Symbol, and Arrow Pavement Markings for Roundabouts	413
Section 3C.07	Markings for Other Circular Intersections.....	414

CHAPTER 3D. MARKINGS FOR PREFERENTIAL LANES

Section 3D.01	Preferential Lane Word and Symbol Markings.....	415
Section 3D.02	Preferential Lane Longitudinal Markings for Motor Vehicles	416

CHAPTER 3E. MARKINGS FOR TOLL PLAZAS

Section 3E.01	Markings for Toll Plazas	423
---------------	--------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER 3F DELINEATORS

Section 3F.01	Delineators	424
Section 3F.02	Delineator Design	424
Section 3F.03	Delineator Application	424
Section 3F.04	Delineator Placement and Spacing.....	426

CHAPTER 3G COLORED PAVEMENTS

Section 3G.01	General	428
---------------	---------------	-----

CHAPTER 3H CHANNELIZING DEVICES USED FOR EMPHASIS OF PAVEMENT MARKING PATTERNS

Section 3H.01	Channelizing Devices	429
---------------	----------------------------	-----

CHAPTER 3I ISLANDS

Section 3I.01	General	430
Section 3I.02	Approach-End Treatment	430
Section 3I.03	Island Marking Application	430
Section 3I.04	Island Marking Colors	430
Section 3I.05	Island Delineation	431
Section 3I.06	Pedestrian Islands and Medians	431

CHAPTER 3J RUMBLE STRIP MARKINGS

Section 3J.01	Longitudinal Rumble Strip Markings	432
Section 3J.02	Transverse Rumble Strip Markings.....	432

PART 4 HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS**CHAPTER 4A GENERAL**

Section 4A.01	Types	433
Section 4A.02	Definitions Relating to Highway Traffic Signals.....	433

CHAPTER 4B TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS—GENERAL

Section 4B.01	General	434
Section 4B.02	Basis of Installation or Removal of Traffic Control Signals.....	434
Section 4B.03	Advantages and Disadvantages of Traffic Control Signals	434
Section 4B.04	Alternatives to Traffic Control Signals.....	435
Section 4B.05	Adequate Roadway Capacity.....	435

CHAPTER 4C TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNAL NEEDS STUDIES

Section 4C.01	Studies and Factors for Justifying Traffic Control Signals.....	436
Section 4C.02	Warrant 1, Eight-Hour Vehicular Volume	437
Section 4C.03	Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume.....	439
Section 4C.04	Warrant 3, Peak Hour.....	439
Section 4C.05	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Volume	442
Section 4C.06	Warrant 5, School Crossing.....	442
Section 4C.07	Warrant 6, Coordinated Signal System	445
Section 4C.08	Warrant 7, Crash Experience.....	445
Section 4C.09	Warrant 8, Roadway Network	446
Section 4C.10	Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing	446

CHAPTER 4D TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNAL FEATURES

Section 4D.01	General	449
Section 4D.02	Responsibility for Operation and Maintenance.....	449
Section 4D.03	Provisions for Pedestrians	450
Section 4D.04	Meaning of Vehicular Signal Indications.....	450

Section 4D.05	Application of Steady Signal Indications	453
Section 4D.06	Signal Indications – Design, Illumination, Color, and Shape.....	456
Section 4D.07	Size of Vehicular Signal Indications	456
Section 4D.08	Positions of Signal Indications Within a Signal Face – General	457
Section 4D.09	Positions of Signal Indications Within a Vertical Signal Face	457
Section 4D.10	Positions of Signal Indications Within a Horizontal Signal Face.....	459
Section 4D.11	Number of Signal Faces on an Approach.....	459
Section 4D.12	Visibility, Aiming, and Shielding of Signal Faces	461
Section 4D.13	Lateral Positioning of Signal Faces.....	463
Section 4D.14	Longitudinal Positioning of Signal Faces.....	464
Section 4D.15	Mounting Height of Signal Faces.....	465
Section 4D.16	Lateral Offset (Clearance) of Signal Faces.....	465
Section 4D.17	Signal Indications for Left-Turn Movements – General	465
Section 4D.18	Signal Indications for Permissive Only Mode Left-Turn Movements	467
Section 4D.19	Signal Indications for Protected Only Mode Left-Turn Movements	469
Section 4D.20	Signal Indications for Protected/Permissive Mode Left-Turn Movements.....	471
Section 4D.21	Signal Indications for Right-Turn Movements – General	474
Section 4D.22	Signal Indications for Permissive Only Mode Right-Turn Movements	475
Section 4D.23	Signal Indications for Protected Only Mode Right-Turn Movements	478
Section 4D.24	Signal Indications for Protected/Permissive Mode Right-Turn Movements	480
Section 4D.25	Signal Indications for Approaches With Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lanes and No Through Movement.....	484
Section 4D.26	Yellow Change and Red Clearance Intervals	485
Section 4D.27	Preemption and Priority Control of Traffic Control Signals	489
Section 4D.28	Flashing Operation of Traffic Control Signals – General	491
Section 4D.29	Flashing Operation – Transition Into Flashing Mode	491
Section 4D.30	Flashing Operation – Signal Indications During Flashing Mode	491
Section 4D.31	Flashing Operation – Transition Out of Flashing Mode	492
Section 4D.32	Temporary and Portable Traffic Control Signals	492
Section 4D.33	Lateral Offset of Signal Supports and Cabinets	493
Section 4D.34	Use of Signs at Signalized Locations	493
Section 4D.35	Use of Pavement Markings at Signalized Locations	494

CHAPTER 4E PEDESTRIAN CONTROL FEATURES

Section 4E.01	Pedestrian Signal Heads.....	495
Section 4E.02	Meaning of Pedestrian Signal Head Indications	495
Section 4E.03	Application of Pedestrian Signal Heads.....	495
Section 4E.04	Size, Design, and Illumination of Pedestrian Signal Head Indications.....	496
Section 4E.05	Location and Height of Pedestrian Signal Heads.....	497
Section 4E.06	Pedestrian Intervals and Signal Phases	497
Section 4E.07	Countdown Pedestrian Signals.....	499
Section 4E.08	Pedestrian Detectors	500
Section 4E.09	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – General	504
Section 4E.10	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Location	505
Section 4E.11	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Walk Indications.....	505
Section 4E.12	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Tactile Arrows and Locator Tones.....	507
Section 4E.13	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Extended Pushbutton Press Features	507

CHAPTER 4F PEDESTRIAN HYBRID BEACONS

Section 4F.01	Application of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons	509
Section 4F.02	Design of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons.....	509
Section 4F.03	Operation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons	511

CHAPTER 4G TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS AND HYBRID BEACONS FOR EMERGENCY-VEHICLE ACCESS

Section 4G.01	Application of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals and Hybrid Beacons	513
Section 4G.02	Design of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals	513
Section 4G.03	Operation of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals	513
Section 4G.04	Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacons	514

CHAPTER 4H TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS FOR ONE-LANE, TWO-WAY FACILITIES

Section 4H.01	Application of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities	516
Section 4H.02	Design of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities.....	516
Section 4H.03	Operation of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities.....	516

CHAPTER 4I TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS FOR FREEWAY ENTRANCE RAMPS

Section 4I.01	Application of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals.....	517
Section 4I.02	Design of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals	517
Section 4I.03	Operation of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals	518

CHAPTER 4J TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR MOVABLE BRIDGES

Section 4J.01	Application of Traffic Control for Movable Bridges	519
Section 4J.02	Design and Location of Movable Bridge Signals and Gates	519
Section 4J.03	Operation of Movable Bridge Signals and Gates	521

CHAPTER 4K HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS AT TOLL PLAZAS

Section 4K.01	Traffic Signals at Toll Plazas	522
Section 4K.02	Lane-Use Control Signals at or Near Toll Plazas	522
Section 4K.03	Warning Beacons at Toll Plazas	522

CHAPTER 4L FLASHING BEACONS

Section 4L.01	General Design and Operation of Flashing Beacons	523
Section 4L.02	Intersection Control Beacon.....	523
Section 4L.03	Warning Beacon.....	523
Section 4L.04	Speed Limit Sign Beacon.....	524
Section 4L.05	Stop Beacon	524

CHAPTER 4M LANE-USE CONTROL SIGNALS

Section 4M.01	Application of Lane-Use Control Signals	525
Section 4M.02	Meaning of Lane-Use Control Signal Indications.....	525
Section 4M.03	Design of Lane-Use Control Signals.....	526
Section 4M.04	Operation of Lane-Use Control Signals	527

CHAPTER 4N IN-ROADWAY LIGHTS

Section 4N.01	Application of In-Roadway Lights	528
Section 4N.02	In-Roadway Warning Lights at Crosswalks.....	528

PART 5 TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLUME ROADS

CHAPTER 5A GENERAL

Section 5A.01	Function	531
Section 5A.02	Application.....	531
Section 5A.03	Design	531
Section 5A.04	Placement	533

CHAPTER 5B REGULATORY SIGNS

Section 5B.01	Introduction.....	534
Section 5B.02	STOP and YIELD Signs (R1-1 and R1-2).....	534

Section 5B.03	Speed Limit Signs (R2 Series)	534
Section 5B.04	Traffic Movement and Prohibition Signs (R3, R4, R5, R6, R9, R10, R11, R12, R13, and R14 Series)	535
Section 5B.05	Parking Signs (R8 Series)	535
Section 5B.06	Other Regulatory Signs	535

CHAPTER 5C WARNING SIGNS

Section 5C.01	Introduction	536
Section 5C.02	Horizontal Alignment Signs (W1-1 through W1-8)	536
Section 5C.03	Intersection Warning Signs (W2-1 through W2-6)	537
Section 5C.04	Stop Ahead and Yield Ahead Signs (W3-1, W3-2)	537
Section 5C.05	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2)	537
Section 5C.06	ONE LANE BRIDGE Sign (W5-3)	537
Section 5C.07	Hill Sign (W7-1)	537
Section 5C.08	PAVEMENT ENDS Sign (W8-3)	537
Section 5C.09	Vehicular Traffic Warning and Non-Vehicular Warning Signs (W11 Series and W8-6)	537
Section 5C.10	Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)	539
Section 5C.11	DEAD END or NO OUTLET Signs (W14-1, W14-1a, W14-2, W14-2a)	539
Section 5C.12	NO TRAFFIC SIGNS Sign (W18-1)	539
Section 5C.13	Other Warning Signs	539
Section 5C.14	Object Markers and Barricades	539

CHAPTER 5D GUIDE SIGNS

Section 5D.01	Introduction	540
---------------	--------------------	-----

CHAPTER 5E MARKINGS

Section 5E.01	Introduction	541
Section 5E.02	Center Line Markings	541
Section 5E.03	Edge Line Markings	541
Section 5E.04	Delineators	541
Section 5E.05	Other Markings	541

CHAPTER 5F TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR HIGHWAY-RAIL GRADE CROSSINGS

Section 5F.01	Introduction	542
Section 5F.02	Grade Crossing (Crossbuck) Sign and Number of Tracks Plaque (R15-1, R15-2P)	542
Section 5F.03	Grade Crossing Advance Warning Signs (W10 Series)	542
Section 5F.04	STOP and YIELD Signs (R1-1, R1-2)	543
Section 5F.05	Pavement Markings	543
Section 5F.06	Other Traffic Control Devices	543

CHAPTER 5G TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONES

Section 5G.01	Introduction	544
Section 5G.02	Applications	544
Section 5G.03	Channelization Devices	544
Section 5G.04	Markings	545
Section 5G.05	Other Traffic Control Devices	545

CHAPTER 5H TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR SCHOOL AREAS

Section 5H.01	Introduction	546
---------------	--------------------	-----

PART 6 TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL

CHAPTER 6A GENERAL

Section 6A.01	General	547
---------------	---------------	-----

CHAPTER 6B FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

Section 6B.01	Fundamental Principles of Temporary Traffic Control	549
---------------	---	-----

CHAPTER 6C TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ELEMENTS

Section 6C.01	Temporary Traffic Control Plans.....	551
Section 6C.02	Temporary Traffic Control Zones	552
Section 6C.03	Components of Temporary Traffic Control Zones	552
Section 6C.04	Advance Warning Area.....	552
Section 6C.05	Transition Area.....	554
Section 6C.06	Activity Area.....	554
Section 6C.07	Termination Area	555
Section 6C.08	Tapers	555
Section 6C.09	Detours and Diversions	558
Section 6C.10	One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	558
Section 6C.11	Flagger Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control	558
Section 6C.12	Flag Transfer Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	558
Section 6C.13	Pilot Car Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	560
Section 6C.14	Temporary Traffic Control Signal Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	560
Section 6C.15	Stop or Yield Control Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	560

CHAPTER 6D PEDESTRIAN AND WORKER SAFETY

Section 6D.01	Pedestrian Considerations	561
Section 6D.02	Accessibility Considerations	563
Section 6D.03	Worker Safety Considerations	564

CHAPTER 6E FLAGGER CONTROL

Section 6E.01	Qualifications for Flaggers.....	566
Section 6E.02	High-Visibility Safety Apparel.....	566
Section 6E.03	Hand-Signaling Devices.....	566
Section 6E.04	Automated Flagger Assistance Devices	567
Section 6E.05	STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Devices	569
Section 6E.06	Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Devices	571
Section 6E.07	Flagger Procedures	573
Section 6E.08	Flagger Stations.....	575

CHAPTER 6F TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE DEVICES

Section 6F.01	Types of Devices	576
Section 6F.02	General Characteristics of Signs	576
Section 6F.03	Sign Placement	577
Section 6F.04	Sign Maintenance.....	583
Section 6F.05	Regulatory Sign Authority	583
Section 6F.06	Regulatory Sign Design	583
Section 6F.07	Regulatory Sign Applications	583
Section 6F.08	ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (R11-2)	583
Section 6F.09	Local Traffic Only Signs (R11-3a, R11-4).....	585
Section 6F.10	Weight Limit Signs (R12-1, R12-2, R12-5)	585
Section 6F.11	STAY IN LANE Sign (R4-9).....	586
Section 6F.12	Work Zone and Higher Fines Signs and Plaques	586
Section 6F.13	PEDESTRIAN CROSSWALK Sign (R9-8)	586
Section 6F.14	SIDEWALK CLOSED Signs (R9-9, R9-10, R9-11, R9-11a).....	586

Section 6F.15	Special Regulatory Signs	587
Section 6F.16	Warning Sign Function, Design, and Application.....	587
Section 6F.17	Position of Advance Warning Signs.....	587
Section 6F.18	ROAD (STREET) WORK Sign (W20-1).....	591
Section 6F.19	DETOUR Sign (W20-2)	591
Section 6F.20	ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (W20-3)	591
Section 6F.21	ONE LANE ROAD Sign (W20-4)	591
Section 6F.22	Lane(s) Closed Signs (W20-5, W20-5a)	591
Section 6F.23	CENTER LANE CLOSED AHEAD Sign (W9-3).....	592
Section 6F.24	Lane Ends Sign (W4-2)	592
Section 6F.25	ON RAMP Plaque (W13-4P)	592
Section 6F.26	RAMP NARROWS Sign (W5-4)	592
Section 6F.27	SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD Sign (W23-1)	592
Section 6F.28	EXIT OPEN and EXIT CLOSED Signs (E5-2, E5-2a)	592
Section 6F.29	EXIT ONLY Sign (E5-3)	593
Section 6F.30	NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD Sign (W23-2)	593
Section 6F.31	Flagger Signs (W20-7, W20-7a)	593
Section 6F.32	Two-Way Traffic Sign (W6-3)	593
Section 6F.33	Workers Signs (W21-1, W21-1a)	593
Section 6F.34	FRESH OIL (TAR) Sign (W21-2)	593
Section 6F.35	ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD Sign (W21-3)	593
Section 6F.36	Motorized Traffic Signs (W8-6, W11-10).....	594
Section 6F.37	Shoulder Work Signs (W21-5, W21-5a, W21-5b)	594
Section 6F.38	SURVEY CREW Sign (W21-6)	594
Section 6F.39	UTILITY WORK Sign (W21-7)	594
Section 6F.40	Signs for Blasting Areas.....	594
Section 6F.41	BLASTING ZONE AHEAD Sign (W22-1).....	595
Section 6F.42	TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE Sign (W22-2)	595
Section 6F.43	END BLASTING ZONE Sign (W22-3)	595
Section 6F.44	Shoulder Signs and Plaque (W8-4, W8-9, W8-17, and W8-17P)	595
Section 6F.45	UNEVEN LANES Sign (W8-11)	595
Section 6F.46	STEEL PLATE AHEAD Sign (W8-24)	595
Section 6F.47	NO CENTER LINE Sign (W8-12)	595
Section 6F.48	Reverse Curve Signs (W1-4 Series)	596
Section 6F.49	Double Reverse Curve Signs (W24-1 Series)	596
Section 6F.50	Other Warning Signs.....	596
Section 6F.51	Special Warning Signs	596
Section 6F.52	Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)	596
Section 6F.53	Supplementary Distance Plaque (W7-3aP)	597
Section 6F.54	Motorcycle Plaque (W8-15P)	597
Section 6F.55	Guide Signs	597
Section 6F.56	ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES Sign (G20-1)	597
Section 6F.57	END ROAD WORK Sign (G20-2).....	598
Section 6F.58	PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME Sign (G20-4).....	598
Section 6F.59	Detour Signs (M4-8, M4-8a, M4-8b, M4-9, M4-9a, M4-9b, M4-9c, and M4-10)	598
Section 6F.60	Portable Changeable Message Signs	598
Section 6F.61	Arrow Boards.....	601
Section 6F.62	High-Level Warning Devices (Flag Trees)	603
Section 6F.63	Channelizing Devices	604
Section 6F.64	Cones.....	606
Section 6F.65	Tubular Markers	606
Section 6F.66	Vertical Panels.....	607
Section 6F.67	Drums	607

Section 6F.68	Type 1, 2, or 3 Barricades	607
Section 6F.69	Direction Indicator Barricades.....	609
Section 6F.70	Temporary Traffic Barriers as Channelizing Devices.....	609
Section 6F.71	Longitudinal Channelizing Devices.....	609
Section 6F.72	Temporary Lane Separators	610
Section 6F.73	Other Channelizing Devices	610
Section 6F.74	Detectable Edging for Pedestrians	610
Section 6F.75	Temporary Raised Islands.....	611
Section 6F.76	Opposing Traffic Lane Divider and Sign (W6-4).....	611
Section 6F.77	Pavement Markings.....	612
Section 6F.78	Temporary Markings	612
Section 6F.79	Temporary Raised Pavement Markers	613
Section 6F.80	Delineators	613
Section 6F.81	Lighting Devices	614
Section 6F.82	Floodlights	614
Section 6F.83	Warning Lights	614
Section 6F.84	Temporary Traffic Control Signals.....	615
Section 6F.85	Temporary Traffic Barriers	616
Section 6F.86	Crash Cushions	617
Section 6F.87	Rumble Strips.....	618
Section 6F.88	Screens	618

CHAPTER 6G TYPE OF TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE ACTIVITIES

Section 6G.01	Typical Applications.....	619
Section 6G.02	Work Duration.....	619
Section 6G.03	Location of Work	621
Section 6G.04	Modifications To Fulfill Special Needs.....	621
Section 6G.05	Work Affecting Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities.....	622
Section 6G.06	Work Outside of the Shoulder	622
Section 6G.07	Work on the Shoulder with No Encroachment.....	623
Section 6G.08	Work on the Shoulder with Minor Encroachment.....	624
Section 6G.09	Work Within the Median	624
Section 6G.10	Work Within the Traveled Way of a Two-Lane Highway	624
Section 6G.11	Work Within the Traveled Way of an Urban Street.....	625
Section 6G.12	Work Within the Traveled Way of a Multi-Lane, Non-Access Controlled Highway	625
Section 6G.13	Work Within the Traveled Way at an Intersection	626
Section 6G.14	Work Within the Traveled Way of a Freeway or Expressway	627
Section 6G.15	Two-Lane, Two-Way Traffic on One Roadway of a Normally Divided Highway.....	628
Section 6G.16	Crossovers	628
Section 6G.17	Interchanges	628
Section 6G.18	Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing.....	629
Section 6G.19	Temporary Traffic Control During Nighttime Hours.....	629

CHAPTER 6H TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Section 6H.01	Typical Applications.....	631
---------------	---------------------------	-----

CHAPTER 6I CONTROL OF TRAFFIC THROUGH TRAFFIC INCIDENT MANAGEMENT AREAS

Section 6I.01	General	726
Section 6I.02	Major Traffic Incidents.....	727
Section 6I.03	Intermediate Traffic Incidents.....	728
Section 6I.04	Minor Traffic Incidents	728
Section 6I.05	Use of Emergency-Vehicle Lighting.....	729

PART 7 TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR SCHOOL AREAS

CHAPTER 7A GENERAL

Section 7A.01	Need for Standards.....	731
Section 7A.02	School Routes and Established School Crossings	731
Section 7A.03	School Crossing Control Criteria	731
Section 7A.04	Scope.....	732

CHAPTER 7B SIGNS

Section 7B.01	Size of School Signs.....	733
Section 7B.02	Illumination and Reflectorization.....	734
Section 7B.03	Position of Signs.....	734
Section 7B.04	Height of Signs.....	734
Section 7B.05	Installation of Signs.....	734
Section 7B.06	Lettering.....	734
Section 7B.07	Sign Color for School Warning Signs	734
Section 7B.08	School Sign (S1-1) and Plaques	734
Section 7B.09	School Zone Sign (S1-1) and Plaques (S4-3P, S4-7P) and END SCHOOL ZONE Sign (S5-2).....	736
Section 7B.10	Higher Fines Zone Signs (R2-10, R2-11) and Plaques	736
Section 7B.11	School Advance Crossing Assembly.....	736
Section 7B.12	School Crossing Assembly.....	741
Section 7B.13	School Bus Stop Ahead Sign (S3-1)	742
Section 7B.14	SCHOOL BUS TURN AHEAD Sign (S3-2).....	742
Section 7B.15	School Speed Limit Assembly (S4-1P, S4-2P, S4-3P, S4-4P, S4-6P, S5-1) and END SCHOOL SPEED LIMIT Sign (S5-3)	742
Section 7B.16	Reduced School Speed Limit Ahead Sign (S4-5, S4-5a).....	743
Section 7B.17	Parking and Stopping Signs (R7 and R8 Series)	743

CHAPTER 7C MARKINGS

Section 7C.01	Functions and Limitations.....	744
Section 7C.02	Crosswalk Markings	744
Section 7C.03	Pavement Word, Symbol, and Arrow Markings.....	744

CHAPTER 7D CROSSING SUPERVISION

Section 7D.01	Types of Crossing Supervision.....	745
Section 7D.02	Adult Crossing Guards.....	745
Section 7D.03	Qualifications of Adult Crossing Guards	745
Section 7D.04	Uniform of Adult Crossing Guards.....	745
Section 7D.05	Operating Procedures for Adult Crossing Guards	745

PART 8 TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR RAILROAD AND LIGHT RAIL TRANSIT GRADE CROSSINGS

CHAPTER 8A GENERAL

Section 8A.01	Introduction.....	747
Section 8A.02	Use of Standard Devices, Systems, and Practices at Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	747
Section 8A.03	Use of Standard Devices, Systems, and Practices at Highway-LRT Grade Crossings.....	748
Section 8A.04	Uniform Provisions	749
Section 8A.05	Grade Crossing Elimination.....	749
Section 8A.06	Illumination at Grade Crossings	750
Section 8A.07	Quiet Zone Treatments at Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	750
Section 8A.08	Temporary Traffic Control Zones	750

CHAPTER 8B SIGNS AND MARKINGS

Section 8B.01	Purpose	751
Section 8B.02	Sizes of Grade Crossing Signs	751
Section 8B.03	Grade Crossing (Crossbuck) Sign (R15-1) and Number of Tracks Plaque (R15-2P) at Active and Passive Grade Crossings	751
Section 8B.04	Crossbuck Assemblies with YIELD or STOP Signs at Passive Grade Crossings.....	754
Section 8B.05	Use of STOP (R1-1) or YIELD (R1-2) Signs without Crossbuck Signs at Highway-LRT Grade Crossings	758
Section 8B.06	Grade Crossing Advance Warning Signs (W10 Series)	758
Section 8B.07	EXEMPT Grade Crossing Plaques (R15-3P, W10-1aP).....	759
Section 8B.08	Turn Restrictions During Preemption	760
Section 8B.09	DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS Sign (R8-8).....	760
Section 8B.10	TRACKS OUT OF SERVICE Sign (R8-9).....	760
Section 8B.11	STOP HERE WHEN FLASHING Signs (R8-10, R8-10a)	761
Section 8B.12	STOP HERE ON RED Signs (R10-6, R10-6a).....	761
Section 8B.13	Light Rail Transit Only Lane Signs (R15-4 Series)	761
Section 8B.14	Do Not Pass Light Rail Transit Signs (R15-5, R15-5a)	761
Section 8B.15	No Motor Vehicles On Tracks Signs (R15-6, R15-6a)	762
Section 8B.16	Divided Highway with Light Rail Transit Crossing Signs (R15-7 Series).....	762
Section 8B.17	LOOK Sign (R15-8).....	762
Section 8B.18	Emergency Notification Sign (I-13).....	762
Section 8B.19	Light Rail Transit Approaching-Activated Blank-Out Warning Sign (W10-7).....	763
Section 8B.20	TRAINS MAY EXCEED 80 MPH Sign (W10-8)	763
Section 8B.21	NO TRAIN HORN Sign or Plaque (W10-9, W10-9P)	763
Section 8B.22	NO GATES OR LIGHTS Plaque (W10-13P)	763
Section 8B.23	Low Ground Clearance Grade Crossing Sign (W10-5)	763
Section 8B.24	Storage Space Signs (W10-11, W10-11a, W10-11b).....	764
Section 8B.25	Skewed Crossing Sign (W10-12).....	764
Section 8B.26	Light Rail Transit Station Sign (I-12)	764
Section 8B.27	Pavement Markings.....	764
Section 8B.28	Stop and Yield Lines	766
Section 8B.29	Dynamic Envelope Markings.....	767

CHAPTER 8C FLASHING-LIGHT SIGNALS, GATES, AND TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS

Section 8C.01	Introduction	769
Section 8C.02	Flashing-Light Signals	769
Section 8C.03	Flashing-Light Signals at Highway-LRT Grade Crossings	772
Section 8C.04	Automatic Gates	772
Section 8C.05	Use of Automatic Gates at LRT Grade Crossings.....	773
Section 8C.06	Four-Quadrant Gate Systems	773
Section 8C.07	Wayside Horn Systems.....	775
Section 8C.08	Rail Traffic Detection.....	775
Section 8C.09	Traffic Control Signals at or Near Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	776
Section 8C.10	Traffic Control Signals at or Near Highway-LRT Grade Crossings.....	777
Section 8C.11	Use of Traffic Control Signals for Control of LRT Vehicles at Grade Crossings.....	778
Section 8C.12	Grade Crossings Within or In Close Proximity to Circular Intersections.....	780
Section 8C.13	Pedestrian and Bicycle Signals and Crossings at LRT Grade Crossings.....	780

CHAPTER 8D PATHWAY GRADE CROSSINGS

Section 8D.01	Purpose	786
Section 8D.02	Use of Standard Devices, Systems, and Practices.....	786
Section 8D.03	Pathway Grade Crossing Signs and Markings	786
Section 8D.04	Stop Lines, Edge Lines, and Detectable Warnings	786
Section 8D.05	Passive Devices for Pathway Grade Crossings.....	787
Section 8D.06	Active Traffic Control Systems for Pathway Grade Crossings	788

PART 9 TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR BICYCLE FACILITIES

CHAPTER 9A GENERAL

Section 9A.01	Requirements for Bicyclist Traffic Control Devices.....	789
Section 9A.02	Scope.....	789
Section 9A.03	Definitions Relating to Bicycles	789
Section 9A.04	Maintenance.....	789
Section 9A.05	Relation to Other Documents.....	789
Section 9A.06	Placement Authority.....	789
Section 9A.07	Meaning of Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support.....	789
Section 9A.08	Colors	789

CHAPTER 9B SIGNS

Section 9B.01	Application and Placement of Signs.....	790
Section 9B.02	Design of Bicycle Signs.....	790
Section 9B.03	STOP and YIELD Signs (R1-1, R1-2).....	792
Section 9B.04	Bike Lane Signs and Plaques (R3-17, R3-17aP, R3-17bP).....	794
Section 9B.05	BEGIN RIGHT TURN LANE YIELD TO BIKES Sign (R4-4)	794
Section 9B.06	Bicycles May Use Full Lane Sign (R4-11)	794
Section 9B.07	Bicycle WRONG WAY Sign and RIDE WITH TRAFFIC Plaque (R5-1b, R9-3cP).....	794
Section 9B.08	NO MOTOR VEHICLES Sign (R5-3)	795
Section 9B.09	Selective Exclusion Signs.....	795
Section 9B.10	No Parking Bike Lane Signs (R7-9, R7-9a)	795
Section 9B.11	Bicycle Regulatory Signs (R9-5, R9-6, R10-4, R10-24, R10-25, and R10-26)	795
Section 9B.12	Shared-Use Path Restriction Sign (R9-7)	795
Section 9B.13	Bicycle Signal Actuation Sign (R10-22).....	796
Section 9B.14	Other Regulatory Signs.....	796
Section 9B.15	Turn or Curve Warning Signs (W1 Series)	796
Section 9B.16	Intersection Warning Signs (W2 Series)	796
Section 9B.17	Bicycle Surface Condition Warning Sign (W8-10)	796
Section 9B.18	Bicycle Warning and Combined Bicycle/Pedestrian Signs (W11-1 and W11-15)	796
Section 9B.19	Other Bicycle Warning Signs.....	798
Section 9B.20	Bicycle Guide Signs (D1-1b, D1-1c, D1-2b, D1-2c, D1-3b, D1-3c, D11-1, D11-1c).....	798
Section 9B.21	Bicycle Route Signs (M1-8, M1-8a, M1-9).....	800
Section 9B.22	Bicycle Route Sign Auxiliary Plaques	802
Section 9B.23	Bicycle Parking Area Sign (D4-3).....	804
Section 9B.24	Reference Location Signs (D10-1 through D10-3) and Intermediate Reference Location Signs (D10-1a through D10-3a)	804
Section 9B.25	Mode-Specific Guide Signs for Shared-Use Paths (D11-1a, D11-2, D11-3, D11-4).....	805
Section 9B.26	Object Markers.....	805

CHAPTER 9C MARKINGS

Section 9C.01	Functions of Markings	806
Section 9C.02	General Principles.....	806
Section 9C.03	Marking Patterns and Colors on Shared-Use Paths	806
Section 9C.04	Markings For Bicycle Lanes	806
Section 9C.05	Bicycle Detector Symbol.....	810
Section 9C.06	Pavement Markings for Obstructions.....	810
Section 9C.07	Shared Lane Marking	810

CHAPTER 9D SIGNALS

Section 9D.01	Application.....	816
Section 9D.02	Signal Operations for Bicycles	816

APPENDIX A1. CONGRESSIONAL LEGISLATION	A1-1
APPENDIX A2. METRIC CONVERSIONS.....	A2-1

FIGURES

Page

Figure 1A-1	Process for Requesting and Conducting Experimentations for New Traffic Control Devices ...	5
Figure 1A-2	Process for Incorporating New Traffic Control Devices into the MUTCD	8
Figure 2A-1	Examples of Enhanced Conspicuity for Signs	37
Figure 2A-2	Examples of Heights and Lateral Locations of Sign Installations	38
Figure 2A-3	Examples of Locations for Some Typical Signs at Intersections.....	39
Figure 2A-4	Relative Locations of Regulatory, Warning, and Guide Signs on an Intersection Approach...	40
Figure 2B-1	STOP and YIELD Signs and Plaques	51
Figure 2B-2	Unsignalized Pedestrian Crosswalk Signs	55
Figure 2B-3	Speed Limit and Photo Enforcement Signs and Plaques.....	57
Figure 2B-4	Movement Prohibition and Lane Control Signs and Plaques	60
Figure 2B-5	Intersection Lane Control Sign Arrow Options for Roundabouts.....	62
Figure 2B-6	Center and Reversible Lane Control Signs and Plaques.....	65
Figure 2B-7	Location of Reversible Two-Way Left-Turn Signs.....	66
Figure 2B-8	Jughandle Regulatory Signs	68
Figure 2B-9	Examples of Applications of Jughandle Regulatory and Guide Signing.....	69
Figure 2B-10	Passing, Keep Right, and Slow Traffic Signs	72
Figure 2B-11	Selective Exclusion Signs	75
Figure 2B-12	Locations of Wrong-Way Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths of 30 Feet or Wider	76
Figure 2B-13	ONE WAY and Divided Highway Crossing Signs	78
Figure 2B-14	Locations of ONE WAY Signs.....	79
Figure 2B-15	ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths of 30 Feet or Wider	80
Figure 2B-16	ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths Narrower Than 30 Feet	81
Figure 2B-17	ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths Narrower Than 30 Feet and Separated Left-Turn Lanes	82
Figure 2B-18	Example of Application of Regulatory Signing and Pavement Markings at an Exit Ramp Termination to Deter Wrong-Way Entry	83
Figure 2B-19	Example of Application of Regulatory Signing and Pavement Markings at an Entrance Ramp Terminal Where the Design Does Not Clearly Indicate the Direction of Flow	83
Figure 2B-20	Roundabout Signs and Plaques	84
Figure 2B-21	Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a Mini-Roundabout	85
Figure 2B-22	Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a One-Lane Roundabout	86
Figure 2B-23	Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a Two-Lane Roundabout with Consecutive Double Lefts	87
Figure 2B-24	Parking and Standing Signs and Plaques (R7 Series)	88
Figure 2B-25	Parking and Stopping Signs and Plaques (R8 Series)	90
Figure 2B-26	Pedestrian Signs and Plaques	93
Figure 2B-27	Traffic Signal Signs and Plaques	96
Figure 2B-28	Ramp Metering Signs.....	97
Figure 2B-29	Road Closed and Weight Limit Signs	98
Figure 2B-30	Truck Signs	99
Figure 2B-31	Headlight Use Signs	100
Figure 2B-32	Other Regulatory Signs and Symbols	101
Figure 2C-1	Horizontal Alignment Signs and Plaques	109
Figure 2C-2	Example of Warning Signs for a Turn.....	111
Figure 2C-3	Example of Advisory Speed Signing for an Exit Ramp.....	116
Figure 2C-4	Vertical Grade Signs and Plaques	117
Figure 2C-5	Miscellaneous Warning Signs	118

Figure 2C-6	Roadway and Weather Condition and Advance Traffic Control Signs and Plaques.....	121
Figure 2C-7	Reduced Speed Limit Ahead Signs.....	124
Figure 2C-8	Merging and Passing Signs and Plaques	125
Figure 2C-9	Intersection Warning Signs and Plaques	127
Figure 2C-10	Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs and Plaques.....	129
Figure 2C-11	Non-Vehicular Warning Signs.....	130
Figure 2C-12	Supplemental Warning Plaques.....	132
Figure 2C-13	Object Markers.....	135
Figure 2D-1	Examples of Color-Coded Destination Guide Signs	138
Figure 2D-2	Arrows for Use on Guide Signs.....	141
Figure 2D-3	Route Signs	143
Figure 2D-4	Route Sign Auxiliaries	145
Figure 2D-5	Advance Turn and Directional Arrow Auxiliary Signs	147
Figure 2D-6	Illustration of Directional Assemblies and Other Route Signs (for One Direction of Travel Only).....	149
Figure 2D-7	Destination and Distance Signs.....	155
Figure 2D-8	Destination Signs for Roundabouts.....	158
Figure 2D-9	Examples of Guide Signs for Roundabouts.....	159
Figure 2D-10	Street Name and Parking Signs.....	162
Figure 2D-11	Example of Interchange Crossroad Signing for a One-Lane Approach	165
Figure 2D-12	Example of Minor Interchange Crossroad Signing.....	166
Figure 2D-13	Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Diamond Interchange	167
Figure 2D-14	Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Partial Cloverleaf Interchange	168
Figure 2D-15	Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Cloverleaf Interchange.....	169
Figure 2D-16	Example of Crossroad Signing for an Entrance Ramp with a Nearby Frontage Road.....	170
Figure 2D-17	Example of Weigh Station Signing	173
Figure 2D-18	Examples of Community Wayfinding Guide Signs.....	174
Figure 2D-19	Example of a Community Wayfinding Guide Sign System Showing Direction from a Freeway or Expressway	175
Figure 2D-20	Example of a Color-Coded Community Wayfinding Guide Sign System.....	176
Figure 2D-21	Crossover, Truck Lane, and Slow Vehicle Signs	178
Figure 2D-22	Examples of Use of the National Scenic Byways Sign	180
Figure 2E-1	Example of Guide Sign Spreading	184
Figure 2E-2	Pull-Through Signs	184
Figure 2E-3	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Sign for a Multi-Lane Exit with an Option Lane	194
Figure 2E-4	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane	195
Figure 2E-5	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane (Through Lanes Curve to the Left)	196
Figure 2E-6	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Split with an Option Lane	197
Figure 2E-7	Diagrammatic Guide Sign for a Multi-Lane Exit with an Option Lane.....	199
Figure 2E-8	Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane	200
Figure 2E-9	Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane (Through Lanes Curve to the Left).....	201
Figure 2E-10	Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Split with an Option Lane	202
Figure 2E-11	Example of Signing for a Two-Lane Intermediate or Minor Interchange Exit with an Option Lane and a Dropped Lane.....	204
Figure 2E-12	Example of Signing for a Two-Lane Intermediate or Minor Interchange Exit with Option and Auxiliary Lanes.....	205
Figure 2E-13	EXIT ONLY and LEFT Sign Panels.....	206
Figure 2E-14	Guide Signs for a Split with Dedicated Lanes.....	207
Figure 2E-15	Guide Signs for a Single-Lane Exit to the Left with a Dropped Lane	208
Figure 2E-16	Guide Signs for a Single-Lane Exit to the Right with a Dropped Lane	209
Figure 2E-17	Interstate, Off-Interstate, and U.S. Route Signs	210

Figure 2E-18	Eisenhower Interstate System Signs.....	211
Figure 2E-19	Example of Interchange Numbering for Mainline and Circumferential Routes	213
Figure 2E-20	Example of Interchange Numbering for Mainline, Loop, and Spur Routes.....	214
Figure 2E-21	Example of Interchange Numbering for Overlapping Routes	215
Figure 2E-22	Examples of Interchange Advance Guide Signs, Exit Number Plaques, and LEFT Plaque ...	217
Figure 2E-23	Next Exit Plaques	218
Figure 2E-24	Supplemental Guide Sign for a Multi-Exit Interchange	219
Figure 2E-25	Supplemental Guide Sign for a Park – Ride Facility.....	219
Figure 2E-26	Examples of Interchange Exit Direction Signs	220
Figure 2E-27	Interchange Exit Direction Sign with an Advisory Speed Panel.....	221
Figure 2E-28	Exit Gore Signs	222
Figure 2E-29	Post-Interchange Distance Sign.....	223
Figure 2E-30	Example of Using an Interchange Sequence Sign for Closely-Spaced Interchanges	224
Figure 2E-31	Interchange Sequence Sign	225
Figure 2E-32	Community Interchanges Identification Sign.....	225
Figure 2E-33	NEXT EXITS Sign.....	225
Figure 2E-34	Examples of Guide Signs for a Freeway-to-Freeway Interchange.....	227
Figure 2E-35	Examples of Guide Signs for a Full Cloverleaf Interchange	229
Figure 2E-36	Examples of Guide Signs for a Full Cloverleaf Interchange with Collector-Distributor Roadways	231
Figure 2E-37	Examples of Guide Signs for a Partial Cloverleaf Interchange	232
Figure 2E-38	Examples of Guide Signs for a Diamond Interchange	233
Figure 2E-39	Examples of Guide Signs for a Diamond Interchange in an Urban Area.....	235
Figure 2E-40	Examples of Guide Signs for a Minor Interchange	236
Figure 2F-1	Examples of ETC Account Pictographs and Use of Purple Backgrounds and Underlay Panels	239
Figure 2F-2	Toll Plaza Regulatory Signs and Plaques	240
Figure 2F-3	Toll Plaza Warning Signs and Plaques	241
Figure 2F-4	ETC Account-Only Auxiliary Signs for Use in Route Sign Assemblies	243
Figure 2F-5	Examples of Guide Signs for Entrances to Toll Highways or Ramps	245
Figure 2F-6	Examples of Guide Signs for the Entrance to a Toll Highway on which Tolls are Collected Electronically Only	246
Figure 2F-7	Examples of Guide Signs for Alternative Toll and Non-Toll Ramp Connections to a Non-Toll Highway	247
Figure 2F-8	Examples of Conventional Toll Plaza Advance Signs	248
Figure 2F-9	Examples of Toll Plaza Canopy Signs.....	248
Figure 2F-10	Examples of Mainline Toll Plaza Approach and Canopy Signing	250
Figure 2F-11	Examples of Guide Signs for a Mainline Toll Plaza on a Diverging Alignment from Open-Road ETC Lanes	251
Figure 2G-1	Preferential Lane Regulatory Signs and Plaques	255
Figure 2G-2	Example of Signing for an Added Continuous-Access Contiguous or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	261
Figure 2G-3	Example of Signing for a General-Purpose Lane that Becomes a Continuous-Access Contiguous or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	262
Figure 2G-4	Examples of Warning Signs and Plaques Applicable Only to Preferential Lanes.....	264
Figure 2G-5	Example of an Overhead Advance Guide Sign for a Preferential Lane Entrance	267
Figure 2G-6	Examples of Overhead or Post-Mounted Preferential Lane Entrance Direction Signs	267
Figure 2G-7	Entrance Gore Signs for Barrier-Separated Preferential Lanes.....	268
Figure 2G-8	Example of Signing for an Entrance to Access-Restricted HOV Lanes	269
Figure 2G-9	Example of Signing for an Intermediate Entry to a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	271
Figure 2G-10	Example of Signing for the Intermediate Entry to, Egress from, and End of Access- Restricted HOV Lanes	272

Figure 2G-11	Examples of Barrier-Mounted Guide Signs for an Intermediate Egress from Preferential Lanes	273
Figure 2G-12	Examples of Guide Signs for an Intermediate Egress from a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	274
Figure 2G-13	Example of Signing for a Direct Entrance Ramp to an HOV Lane from a Park-and-Ride Facility and a Local Street	275
Figure 2G-14	Exit Gore Sign for a Direct Exit from a Preferential Lane.....	276
Figure 2G-15	Examples of Guide Signs for Direct HOV Lane Entrance and Exit Ramps	277
Figure 2G-16	Examples of Guide Signs for a Direct Access Ramp between HOV Lanes on Separate Freeways.....	278
Figure 2G-17	Regulatory Signs for Managed Lanes	280
Figure 2G-18	Examples of Guide Signs for Entrances to Priced Managed Lanes	281
Figure 2G-19	Example of an Exit Destinations Sign for a Managed Lane	282
Figure 2G-20	Example of a Comparative Travel Time Information Sign for Preferential or Managed Lanes	282
Figure 2G-21	Example of Signing for the Entrance to an Access-Restricted Priced Managed Lane	283
Figure 2G-22	Example of Signing for the Entrance to an Access-Restricted Priced Managed Lane Where a General-Purpose Lane Becomes the Managed Lane.....	284
Figure 2G-23	Example of Signing for an Intermediate Entry to a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated Priced Managed Lane.....	285
Figure 2G-24	Example of Signing for the Intermediate Entry to, Egress from, and End of Access-Restricted Priced Managed Lanes.....	286
Figure 2G-25	Examples of Guide Signs for an Intermediate Egress from a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	287
Figure 2G-26	Examples of Guide Signs for Direct Managed Lane Entrance and Exit Ramps	288
Figure 2G-27	Examples of Guide Signs for a Direct Access Ramp between Managed Lanes on Separate Freeways.....	289
Figure 2G-28	Examples of Guide Signs for a Direct Entrance Ramp to a Priced Managed Lane and Trailblazing to a Nearby Entrance to the General-Purpose Lanes.....	290
Figure 2G-29	Examples of Guide Signs for Separate Entrance Ramps to General-Purpose and Priced Managed Lanes from the Same Crossroad	291
Figure 2H-1	General Information and Miscellaneous Information Signs	293
Figure 2H-2	Reference Location Signs.....	295
Figure 2H-3	Intermediate Reference Location Signs	295
Figure 2H-4	Enhanced Reference Location Signs.....	296
Figure 2H-5	Examples of Acknowledgment Sign Designs.....	298
Figure 2I-1	General Service Signs and Plaques.....	301
Figure 2I-2	Example of Next Services Plaque	302
Figure 2I-3	Examples of General Service Signs with and without Exit Numbering.....	304
Figure 2I-4	Examples of Interstate Oasis Signs and Plaques	306
Figure 2I-5	Rest Area and Other Roadside Area Signs.....	307
Figure 2I-6	Brake Check Area and Chain-Up Area Signs	308
Figure 2I-7	Examples of Tourist Information and Welcome Center Signs	309
Figure 2I-8	Radio, Telephone, and Carpool Information Signs	310
Figure 2J-1	Examples of Specific Service Signs	314
Figure 2J-2	Examples of Specific Service Sign Locations	315
Figure 2J-3	Examples of Supplemental Messages on Logo Sign Panels.....	316
Figure 2J-4	Examples of RV Access Supplemental Messages on Logo Sign Panels	316
Figure 2J-5	Examples of Specific Service Trailblazer Signs.....	319
Figure 2K-1	Examples of Tourist-Oriented Directional Signs	321
Figure 2K-2	Examples of Intersection Approach Signs and Advance Signs for Tourist-Oriented Directional Signs.....	322
Figure 2M-1	Examples of Use of Arrows, Educational Plaques, and Prohibitory Slashes	333

Figure 2M-2	Examples of Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Guide Signs	334
Figure 2M-3	Arrangement, Height, and Lateral Position of Signs Located Within Recreational and Cultural Interest Areas	335
Figure 2M-4	Examples of Symbol and Destination Guide Signing Layout	336
Figure 2M-5	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for General Applications	337
Figure 2M-6	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Accommodations	338
Figure 2M-7	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Services.....	338
Figure 2M-8	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Land Recreation.....	339
Figure 2M-9	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Water Recreation	340
Figure 2M-10	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Winter Recreation	341
Figure 2N-1	Emergency Management Signs	343
Figure 3B-1	Examples of Two-Lane, Two-Way Marking Applications	350
Figure 3B-2	Examples of Four-or-More Lane, Two-Way Marking Applications	351
Figure 3B-3	Examples of Three-Lane, Two-Way Marking Applications.....	352
Figure 3B-4	Method of Locating and Determining the Limits of No-Passing Zones at Curves	353
Figure 3B-5	Example of Application of Three-Lane, Two-Way Marking for Changing Direction of the Center Lane	355
Figure 3B-6	Example of Reversible Lane Marking Application	356
Figure 3B-7	Example of Two-Way Left-Turn Lane Marking Applications.....	357
Figure 3B-8	Examples of Dotted Line and Channelizing Line Applications for Exit Ramp Markings....	358
Figure 3B-9	Examples of Dotted Line and Channelizing Line Applications for Entrance Ramp Markings	360
Figure 3B-10	Examples of Applications of Freeway and Expressway Lane-Drop Markings	363
Figure 3B-11	Examples of Applications of Conventional Road Lane-Drop Markings	368
Figure 3B-12	Example of Solid Double White Lines Used to Prohibit Lane Changing	370
Figure 3B-13	Examples of Line Extensions through Intersections	372
Figure 3B-14	Examples of Applications of Lane-Reduction Transition Markings	375
Figure 3B-15	Examples of Applications of Markings for Obstructions in the Roadway	377
Figure 3B-16	Recommended Yield Line Layouts	382
Figure 3B-17	Examples of Yield Lines at Unsignalized Midblock Crosswalks.....	383
Figure 3B-18	Do Not Block Intersection Markings	384
Figure 3B-19	Examples of Crosswalk Markings.....	384
Figure 3B-20	Example of Crosswalk Markings for an Exclusive Pedestrian Phase that Permits Diagonal Crossing	385
Figure 3B-21	Examples of Parking Space Markings	386
Figure 3B-22	International Symbol of Accessibility Parking Space Marking	387
Figure 3B-23	Example of Elongated Letters for Word Pavement Markings	387
Figure 3B-24	Examples of Standard Arrows for Pavement Markings	388
Figure 3B-25	Examples of Elongated Route Shields for Pavement Markings	390
Figure 3B-26	Yield Ahead Triangle Symbols	391
Figure 3B-27	Examples of Lane-Use Control Word and Arrow Pavement Markings	392
Figure 3B-28	Example of the Application of Speed Reduction Markings.....	394
Figure 3B-29	Pavement Markings for Speed Humps without Crosswalks.....	396
Figure 3B-30	Pavement Markings for Speed Tables or Speed Humps with Crosswalks	397
Figure 3B-31	Advance Warning Markings for Speed Humps	398
Figure 3C-1	Example of Markings for Approach and Circulatory Roadways at a Roundabout	399
Figure 3C-2	Lane-Use Arrow Pavement Marking Options for Roundabout Approaches	400
Figure 3C-3	Example of Markings for a One-Lane Roundabout	400
Figure 3C-4	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with One- and Two-Lane Approaches...	401
Figure 3C-5	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with One-Lane Exits.....	403
Figure 3C-6	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with Two-Lane Exits.....	404
Figure 3C-7	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with a Double Left Turn	405
Figure 3C-8	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with a Double Right Turn	406
Figure 3C-9	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with Consecutive Double Lefts.....	407

Figure 3C-10	Example of Markings for a Three-Lane Roundabout with Two- and Three-Lane Approaches.....	408
Figure 3C-11	Example of Markings for a Three-Lane Roundabout with Three-Lane Approaches	409
Figure 3C-12	Example of Markings for a Three-Lane Roundabout with Two-Lane Exits	410
Figure 3C-13	Example of Markings for Two Linked Roundabouts	411
Figure 3C-14	Example of Markings for a Diamond Interchange with Two Circular-Shaped Roundabout Ramp Terminals.....	412
Figure 3D-1	Markings for Barrier-Separated Preferential Lanes	418
Figure 3D-2	Markings for Buffer-Separated Preferential Lanes	418
Figure 3D-3	Markings for Contiguous Preferential Lanes	420
Figure 3D-4	Markings for Counter-Flow Preferential Lanes on Divided Highways	422
Figure 3F-1	Examples of Delineator Placement	425
Figure 3J-1	Examples of Longitudinal Rumble Strip Markings	432
Figure 4C-1	Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume.....	440
Figure 4C-2	Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume (70% Factor)	440
Figure 4C-3	Warrant 3, Peak Hour.....	441
Figure 4C-4	Warrant 3, Peak Hour (70% Factor).....	441
Figure 4C-5	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Four-Hour Volume.....	443
Figure 4C-6	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Four-Hour Volume (70% Factor)	443
Figure 4C-7	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Peak Hour.....	444
Figure 4C-8	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Peak Hour (70% Factor)	444
Figure 4C-9	Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing (One Approach Lane at the Track Crossing)	447
Figure 4C-10	Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing (Two or More Approach Lanes at the Track Crossing)	447
Figure 4D-1	Example of U-Turn Signal Face	456
Figure 4D-2	Typical Arrangements of Signal Sections in Signal Faces That Do Not Control Turning Movements	458
Figure 4D-3	Recommended Vehicular Signal Faces for Approaches with Posted, Statutory, or 85 th -Percentile Speed of 45 mph or Higher	460
Figure 4D-4	Lateral and Longitudinal Location of Primary Signal Faces.....	463
Figure 4D-5	Maximum Mounting Height of Signal Faces Located Between 40 Feet and 53 Feet from Stop Line	465
Figure 4D-6	Typical Position and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Permissive Only Mode Left Turns.....	467
Figure 4D-7	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Permissive Only Mode Left Turns	468
Figure 4D-8	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Red Arrow for Permissive Only Mode and Protected/Permissive Mode Left Turns.....	469
Figure 4D-9	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Left Turns.....	470
Figure 4D-10	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Left Turns.....	471
Figure 4D-11	Typical Position and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected/Permissive Mode Left Turns	472
Figure 4D-12	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Protected/Permissive Mode and Protected Only Mode Left Turns	473
Figure 4D-13	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Permissive Only Mode Right Turns	476
Figure 4D-14	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Permissive Only Mode Right Turns	477
Figure 4D-15	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Red Arrow for Permissive Only Mode and Protected/Permissive Mode Right Turns	478

Figure 4D-16	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Right Turns	479
Figure 4D-17	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Right Turns.....	480
Figure 4D-18	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected/Permissive Mode Right Turns	481
Figure 4D-19	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Protected/Permissive Mode and Protected Only Mode Right Turns	482
Figure 4D-20	Signal Indications for Approaches with a Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lane and No Through Movement.....	486
Figure 4E-1	Typical Pedestrian Signal Indications	496
Figure 4E-2	Pedestrian Intervals.....	498
Figure 4E-3	Pushbutton Location Area.....	501
Figure 4E-4	Typical Pushbutton Locations	502
Figure 4F-1	Guidelines for the Installation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons on Low-Speed Roadways.....	510
Figure 4F-2	Guidelines for the Installation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons on High-Speed Roadways.....	510
Figure 4F-3	Sequence for a Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon	511
Figure 4G-1	Sequence for an Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacon	515
Figure 4M-1	Left-Turn Lane-Use Control Signals	526
Figure 5B-1	Regulatory Signs on Low-Volume Roads.....	534
Figure 5B-2	Parking Signs and Plaques on Low-Volume Roads.....	535
Figure 5C-1	Horizontal Alignment and Intersection Warning Signs and Plaques and Object Markers on Low-Volume Roads.....	536
Figure 5C-2	Other Warning Signs and Plaques on Low-Volume Roads	538
Figure 5F-1	Highway-Rail Grade Crossing Signs and Plaques for Low-Volume Roads.....	542
Figure 5G-1	Temporary Traffic Control Signs and Plaques on Low-Volume Roads	545
Figure 6C-1	Component Parts of a Temporary Traffic Control Zone	553
Figure 6C-2	Types of Tapers and Buffer Spaces	556
Figure 6C-3	Example of a One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Taper.....	559
Figure 6E-1	Example of the Use of a STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD).....	570
Figure 6E-2	Example of the Use of a Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD).....	572
Figure 6E-3	Use of Hand-Signaling Devices by Flaggers.....	574
Figure 6F-1	Height and Lateral Location of Signs—Typical Installations.....	581
Figure 6F-2	Methods of Mounting Signs Other Than on Posts	582
Figure 6F-3	Regulatory Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones.....	584
Figure 6F-4	Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones.....	588
Figure 6F-5	Exit Open and Closed and Detour Signs.....	592
Figure 6F-6	Advance Warning Arrow Board Display Specifications	602
Figure 6F-7	Channelizing Devices	605
Figure 6H-1	Work Beyond the Shoulder (TA-1)	635
Figure 6H-2	Blasting Zone (TA-2)	637
Figure 6H-3	Work on the Shoulders (TA-3)	639
Figure 6H-4	Short-Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder (TA-4).....	641
Figure 6H-5	Shoulder Closure on a Freeway (TA-5).....	643
Figure 6H-6	Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment (TA-6)	645
Figure 6H-7	Road Closure with a Diversion (TA-7).....	647
Figure 6H-8	Road Closure with an Off-Site Detour (TA-8)	649
Figure 6H-9	Overlapping Routes with a Detour (TA-9)	651
Figure 6H-10	Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers (TA-10)	653
Figure 6H-11	Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-11).....	655
Figure 6H-12	Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals (TA-12).....	657
Figure 6H-13	Temporary Road Closure (TA-13).....	659
Figure 6H-14	Haul Road Crossing (TA-14)	661
Figure 6H-15	Work in the Center of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-15)	663

Figure 6H-16	Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-16).....	665
Figure 6H-17	Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road (TA-17).....	667
Figure 6H-18	Lane Closure on a Minor Street (TA-18).....	669
Figure 6H-19	Detour for One Travel Direction (TA-19).....	671
Figure 6H-20	Detour for a Closed Street (TA-20).....	673
Figure 6H-21	Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection (TA-21)	675
Figure 6H-22	Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-22).....	677
Figure 6H-23	Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-23).....	679
Figure 6H-24	Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-24).....	681
Figure 6H-25	Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection (TA-25).....	683
Figure 6H-26	Closure in the Center of an Intersection (TA-26).....	685
Figure 6H-27	Closure at the Side of an Intersection (TA-27).....	687
Figure 6H-28	Sidewalk Detour or Diversion (TA-28)	689
Figure 6H-29	Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours (TA-29)	691
Figure 6H-30	Interior Lane Closure on a Multi-Lane Street (TA-30)	693
Figure 6H-31	Lane Closures on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes (TA-31)	695
Figure 6H-32	Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway (TA-32).....	697
Figure 6H-33	Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway (TA-33)	699
Figure 6H-34	Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier (TA-34).....	701
Figure 6H-35	Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road (TA-35)	703
Figure 6H-36	Lane Shift on a Freeway (TA-36).....	705
Figure 6H-37	Double Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-37).....	707
Figure 6H-38	Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-38)	709
Figure 6H-39	Median Crossover on a Freeway (TA-39).....	711
Figure 6H-40	Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp (TA-40)	713
Figure 6H-41	Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp (TA-41)	715
Figure 6H-42	Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp (TA-42)	717
Figure 6H-43	Partial Exit Ramp Closure (TA-43)	719
Figure 6H-44	Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp (TA-44).....	721
Figure 6H-45	Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers (TA-45)	723
Figure 6H-46	Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing (TA-46).....	725
Figure 6I-1	Examples of Traffic Incident Management Area Signs.....	727
Figure 7A-1	Example of School Route Plan Map.....	732
Figure 7B-1	School Area Signs	735
Figure 7B-2	Example of Signing for a Higher Fines School Zone without a School Crossing	737
Figure 7B-3	Example of Signing for a Higher Fines School Zone with a School Speed Limit	738
Figure 7B-4	Example of Signing for a School Crossing Outside of a School Zone	739
Figure 7B-5	Example of Signing for a School Zone with a School Speed Limit and a School Crossing ..	740
Figure 7B-6	In-Street Signs in School Areas	741
Figure 7C-1	Two-Lane Pavement Marking of “SCHOOL”	744
Figure 8B-1	Regulatory Signs and Plaques for Grade Crossings	753
Figure 8B-2	Crossbuck Assembly with a YIELD or STOP Sign on the Crossbuck Sign Support.....	754
Figure 8B-3	Crossbuck Assembly with a YIELD or STOP Sign on a Separate Sign Support.....	755
Figure 8B-4	Warning Signs and Plaques for Grade Crossings	759
Figure 8B-5	Example of an Emergency Notification Sign	762
Figure 8B-6	Example of Placement of Warning Signs and Pavement Markings at Grade Crossings	765
Figure 8B-7	Grade Crossing Pavement Markings.....	766
Figure 8B-8	Example of Dynamic Envelope Pavement Markings at Grade Crossings.....	767
Figure 8B-9	Examples of Light Rail Transit Vehicle Dynamic Envelope Markings for Mixed-Use Alignments.....	768
Figure 8C-1	Composite Drawing of Active Traffic Control Devices for Grade Crossings Showing Clearances	770
Figure 8C-2	Example of Location Plan for Flashing-Light Signals and Four-Quadrant Gates.....	774
Figure 8C-3	Light Rail Transit Signals.....	779

Figure 8C-4	Example of Flashing-Light Signal Assembly for Pedestrian Crossings	781
Figure 8C-5	Example of a Shared Pedestrian/Roadway Gate	782
Figure 8C-6	Example of a Separate Pedestrian Gate	782
Figure 8C-7	Examples of Placement of Pedestrian Gates	783
Figure 8C-8	Example of Swing Gates	784
Figure 8C-9	Example of Pedestrian Barriers at an Offset Grade Crossing	784
Figure 8C-10	Examples of Pedestrian Barrier Installation at an Offset Non-Intersection Grade Crossing...	785
Figure 8D-1	Example of Signing and Markings for a Pathway Grade Crossing	787
Figure 9B-1	Sign Placement on Shared-Use Paths	790
Figure 9B-2	Regulatory Signs and Plaques for Bicycle Facilities	793
Figure 9B-3	Warning Signs and Plaques and Object Markers for Bicycle Facilities	797
Figure 9B-4	Guide Signs and Plaques for Bicycle Facilities	799
Figure 9B-5	Example of Signing for the Beginning and End of a Designated Bicycle Route on a Shared-Use Path	801
Figure 9B-6	Example of Bicycle Guide Signing	802
Figure 9B-7	Examples of Signing and Markings for a Shared-Use Path Crossing	803
Figure 9B-8	Example of Mode-Specific Guide Signing on a Shared-Use Path	805
Figure 9C-1	Example of Intersection Pavement Markings—Designated Bicycle Lane with Left-Turn Area, Heavy Turn Volumes, Parking, One-Way Traffic, or Divided Highway.....	807
Figure 9C-2	Examples of Center Line Markings for Shared-Use Paths.....	808
Figure 9C-3	Word, Symbol, and Arrow Pavement Markings for Bicycle Lanes.....	809
Figure 9C-4	Example of Bicycle Lane Treatment at a Right Turn Only Lane	811
Figure 9C-5	Example of Bicycle Lane Treatment at Parking Lane into a Right Turn Only Lane	812
Figure 9C-6	Example of Pavement Markings for Bicycle Lanes on a Two-Way Street.....	813
Figure 9C-7	Bicycle Detector Pavement Marking.....	814
Figure 9C-8	Examples of Obstruction Pavement Markings	815
Figure 9C-9	Shared Lane Marking	815

TABLES

Page

Table I-1	Evolution of the MUTCD.....	I-2
Table I-2	Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA	I-4
Table 1A-1	Acceptable Abbreviations	24
Table 1A-2	Abbreviations that Shall be Used Only on Portable Changeable Message Signs.....	25
Table 1A-3	Unacceptable Abbreviations.....	26
Table 2A-1	Illumination of Sign Elements.....	29
Table 2A-2	Retroreflection of Sign Elements.....	29
Table 2A-3	Minimum Maintained Retroreflectivity Levels.....	31
Table 2A-4	Use of Sign Shapes.....	32
Table 2A-5	Common Uses of Sign Colors	33
Table 2B-1	Regulatory Sign and Plaque Sizes.....	46
Table 2B-2	Meanings of Symbols and Legends on Reversible Lane Control Signs	65
Table 2C-1	Categories of Warning Signs and Plaques.....	104
Table 2C-2	Warning Sign and Plaque Sizes.....	105
Table 2C-3	Minimum Size of Supplemental Warning Plaques	107
Table 2C-4	Guidelines for Advance Placement of Warning Signs	108
Table 2C-5	Horizontal Alignment Sign Selection	110
Table 2C-6	Approximate Spacing of Chevron Alignment Signs on Horizontal Curves.....	113
Table 2D-1	Conventional Road Guide Sign Sizes	139
Table 2D-2	Recommended Minimum Letter Heights on Street Name Signs	163
Table 2E-1	Freeway or Expressway Guide Sign and Plaque Sizes	186

Table 2E-2	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Expressway Guide Signs According to Interchange Classification	188
Table 2E-3	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Expressway Guide Signs According to Sign Type..	189
Table 2E-4	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Freeway Guide Signs According to Interchange Classification	190
Table 2E-5	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Freeway Guide Signs According to Sign Type	191
Table 2F-1	Toll Facility Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes	237
Table 2G-1	Managed and Preferential Lanes Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes.....	254
Table 2H-1	General Information Sign Sizes	292
Table 2I-1	General Service Sign and Plaque Sizes	299
Table 2J-1	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Specific Service Signs According to Sign Type.....	316
Table 2L-1	Example of Units of Information	328
Table 2M-1	Category Chart for Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbols.....	331
Table 2N-1	Emergency Management Sign Sizes	343
Table 3B-1	Minimum Passing Sight Distances for No-Passing Zone Markings	352
Table 3D-1	Standard Edge Line and Lane Line Markings for Preferential Lanes.....	417
Table 3F-1	Approximate Spacing for Delineators on Horizontal Curves	427
Table 4C-1	Warrant 1, Eight-Hour Vehicular Volume	438
Table 4C-2	Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Daily Frequency of Rail Traffic.....	448
Table 4C-3	Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Percentage of High-Occupancy Buses.....	448
Table 4C-4	Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Percentage of Tractor-Trailer Trucks	448
Table 4D-1	Recommended Minimum Number of Primary Signal Faces for Through Traffic on Approaches with Posted, Statutory, or 85 th -Percentile Speed of 45 mph or Higher	461
Table 4D-2	Minimum Sight Distance for Signal Visibility.....	461
Table 5A-1	Sign and Plaque Sizes on Low-Volume Roads	532
Table 6C-1	Recommended Advance Warning Sign Minimum Spacing.....	554
Table 6C-2	Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed.....	555
Table 6C-3	Taper Length Criteria for Temporary Traffic Control Zones	557
Table 6C-4	Formulas for Determining Taper Length	557
Table 6E-1	Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed.....	575
Table 6F-1	Temporary Traffic Control Zone Sign and Plaque Sizes	578
Table 6H-1	Index to Typical Applications	632
Table 6H-2	Meaning of Symbols on Typical Application Diagrams	633
Table 6H-3	Meaning of Letter Codes on Typical Application Diagrams	633
Table 6H-4	Formulas for Determining Taper Length	633
Table 7B-1	School Area Sign and Plaque Sizes.....	733
Table 8B-1	Grade Crossing Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes	752
Table 9B-1	Bicycle Facility Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes	791
Table A2-1	Conversion of Inches to Millimeters	A2-1
Table A2-2	Conversion of Feet to Meters	A2-1
Table A2-3	Conversion of Miles to Kilometers	A2-1
Table A2-4	Conversion of Miles per Hour to Kilometers/Hour	A2-1

MANUAL ON UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES

INTRODUCTION

Standard:

- 01 **Traffic control devices shall be defined as all signs, signals, markings, and other devices used to regulate, warn, or guide traffic, placed on, over, or adjacent to a street, highway, pedestrian facility, bikeway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) by authority of a public agency or official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of a private road, by authority of the private owner or private official having jurisdiction.**
- 02 **The Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) is incorporated by reference in 23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Part 655, Subpart F and shall be recognized as the national standard for all traffic control devices installed on any street, highway, bikeway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 109(d) and 402(a). The policies and procedures of the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) to obtain basic uniformity of traffic control devices shall be as described in 23 CFR 655, Subpart F.**
- 03 **In accordance with 23 CFR 655.603(a), for the purposes of applicability of the MUTCD:**
- A. **Toll roads under the jurisdiction of public agencies or authorities or public-private partnerships shall be considered to be public highways;**
 - B. **Private roads open to public travel shall be as defined in Section 1A.13; and**
 - C. **Parking areas, including the driving aisles within those parking areas, that are either publicly or privately owned shall not be considered to be “open to public travel” for purposes of MUTCD applicability.**
- 04 **Any traffic control device design or application provision contained in this Manual shall be considered to be in the public domain. Traffic control devices contained in this Manual shall not be protected by a patent, trademark, or copyright, except for the Interstate Shield and any items owned by FHWA.**

Support:

- 05 **Pictographs, as defined in Section 1A.13, are embedded in traffic control devices but the pictographs themselves are not considered traffic control devices for the purposes of Paragraph 4.**
- 06 **The need for uniform standards was recognized long ago. The American Association of State Highway Officials (AASHO), now known as the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), published a manual for rural highways in 1927, and the National Conference on Street and Highway Safety (NCSHS) published a manual for urban streets in 1930. In the early years, the necessity for unification of the standards applicable to the different classes of road and street systems was obvious. To meet this need, a joint committee of AASHO and NCSHS developed and published the original edition of this Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) in 1935. That committee, now called the National Committee on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (NCUTCD), though changed from time to time in name, organization, and personnel, has been in continuous existence and has contributed to periodic revisions of this Manual. The FHWA has administered the MUTCD since the 1971 edition. The FHWA and its predecessor organizations have participated in the development and publishing of the previous editions. There were nine previous editions of the MUTCD, and several of those editions were revised one or more times. Table I-1 traces the evolution of the MUTCD, including the two manuals developed by AASHO and NCSHS.**

Standard:

- 07 **The U.S. Secretary of Transportation, under authority granted by the Highway Safety Act of 1966, decreed that traffic control devices on all streets and highways open to public travel in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 109(d) and 402(a) in each State shall be in substantial conformance with the Standards issued or endorsed by the FHWA.**

Support:

- 08 **The “Uniform Vehicle Code (UVC)” is one of the publications referenced in the MUTCD. The UVC contains a model set of motor vehicle codes and traffic laws for use throughout the United States.**

Guidance:

- 09 *The States should adopt Section 15-116 of the UVC, which states that, “No person shall install or maintain in any area of private property used by the public any sign, signal, marking, or other device intended to regulate, warn, or guide traffic unless it conforms with the State manual and specifications adopted under Section 15-104.”*

Table I-1. Evolution of the MUTCD

Year	Name	Month / Year Revised
1927	Manual and Specifications for the Manufacture, Display, and Erection of U.S. Standard Road Markers and Signs (for rural roads)	4/29, 12/31
1930	Manual on Street Traffic Signs, Signals, and Markings (for urban streets)	No revisions
1935	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways (MUTCD)	2/39
1942	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways — War Emergency Edition	No revisions
1948	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	9/54
1961	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	No revisions
1971	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	11/71, 4/72, 3/73, 10/73, 6/74, 6/75, 9/76, 12/77
1978	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	12/79, 12/83, 9/84, 3/86
1988	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	1/90, 3/92, 9/93, 11/94, 12/96, 6/98, 1/00
2000	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways — Millennium Edition	7/02
2003	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	11/04, 12/07
2009	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	

Support:

10 The Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support material described in this edition of the MUTCD provide the transportation professional with the information needed to make appropriate decisions regarding the use of traffic control devices on streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13).

11 Throughout this Manual the headings Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support are used to classify the nature of the text that follows. Figures and tables, including the notes contained therein, supplement the text and might constitute a Standard, Guidance, Option, or Support. The user needs to refer to the appropriate text to classify the nature of the figure, table, or note contained therein.

Standard:

12 **When used in this Manual, the text headings of Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support shall be as defined in Paragraph 1 of Section 1A.13.**

Support:

13 Throughout this Manual all dimensions and distances are provided in English units. Appendix A2 contains tables for converting each of the English unit numerical values that are used in this Manual to the equivalent Metric (International System of Units) values.

Guidance:

14 *If Metric units are to be used in laying out distances or determining sizes of devices, such units should be specified on plan drawings and made known to those responsible for designing, installing, or maintaining traffic control devices.*

15 *Except when a specific numeral is required or recommended by the text of a Section of this Manual, numerals displayed on the images of devices in the figures that specify quantities such as times, distances, speed limits, and weights should be regarded as examples only. When installing any of these devices, the numerals should be appropriately altered to fit the specific situation.*

Support:

16 The following information will be useful when reference is being made to a specific portion of text in this Manual.

17 There are nine Parts in this Manual and each Part is comprised of one or more Chapters. Each Chapter is comprised of one or more Sections. Parts are given a numerical identification, such as Part 2 – Signs. Chapters are identified by the Part number and a letter, such as Chapter 2B – Regulatory Signs, Barricades, and Gates. Sections are identified by the Chapter number and letter followed by a decimal point and a number, such as Section 2B.03 – Size of Regulatory Signs.

- 18 Each Section is comprised of one or more paragraphs. The paragraphs are indented and are identified by a number. Paragraphs are counted from the beginning of each Section without regard to the intervening text headings (Standard, Guidance, Option, or Support). Some paragraphs have lettered or numbered items. As an example of how to cite this Manual, the phrase “Not less than 40 feet beyond the stop line” that appears in Section 4D.14 of this Manual would be referenced in writing as “Section 4D.14, P1, A.1,” and would be verbally referenced as “Item A.1 of Paragraph 1 of Section 4D.14.”

Standard:

- 19 **In accordance with 23 CFR 655.603(b)(3), States or other Federal agencies that have their own MUTCDs or Supplements shall revise these MUTCDs or Supplements to be in substantial conformance with changes to the National MUTCD within 2 years of the effective date of the Final Rule for the changes. Substantial conformance of such State or other Federal agency MUTCDs or Supplements shall be as defined in 23 CFR 655.603(b)(1).**
- 20 **After the effective date of a new edition of the MUTCD or a revision thereto, or after the adoption thereof by the State, whichever occurs later, new or reconstructed devices installed shall be in compliance with the new edition or revision.**
- 21 **In cases involving Federal-aid projects for new highway or bikeway construction or reconstruction, the traffic control devices installed (temporary or permanent) shall be in conformance with the most recent edition of the National MUTCD before that highway is opened or re-opened to the public for unrestricted travel [23 CFR 655.603(d)(2) and (d)(3)].**
- 22 **Unless a particular device is no longer serviceable, non-compliant devices on existing highways and bikeways shall be brought into compliance with the current edition of the National MUTCD as part of the systematic upgrading of substandard traffic control devices (and installation of new required traffic control devices) required pursuant to the Highway Safety Program, 23 U.S.C. §402(a). The FHWA has the authority to establish other target compliance dates for implementation of particular changes to the MUTCD [23 CFR 655.603(d)(1)]. These target compliance dates established by the FHWA shall be as shown in Table I-2.**
- 23 **Except as provided in Paragraph 24, when a non-compliant traffic control device is being replaced or refurbished because it is damaged, missing, or no longer serviceable for any reason, it shall be replaced with a compliant device.**
- Option:
- 24 A damaged, missing, or otherwise non-serviceable device that is non-compliant may be replaced in kind if engineering judgment indicates that:
- A. One compliant device in the midst of a series of adjacent non-compliant devices would be confusing to road users; and/or
 - B. The schedule for replacement of the whole series of non-compliant devices will result in achieving timely compliance with the MUTCD.

Table I-2. Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA (Sheet 1 of 3)

2009 MUTCD Section Number(s)	2009 MUTCD Section Title	Specific Provision	Compliance Date
2A.08	Minimum Retroreflectivity Levels	Implementation and continued use of an assessment or management method that is designed to maintain traffic sign retroreflectivity at or above the established minimum levels	January 22, 2012 (c)
2A.08	Minimum Retroreflectivity Levels	Replacement of regulatory, warning, and post-mounted guide (except street name) signs that are identified using the assessment or management method as failing to meet the established minimum levels	January 22, 2015 (c)
2A.08	Minimum Retroreflectivity Levels	Replacement of street name signs and overhead guide signs that are identified using the assessment or management method as failing to meet the established minimum levels.	January 22, 2018 (c)
2A.19	Lateral Offset	Crashworthiness of sign supports on roads with posted speed limit of 50 mph or higher	January 17, 2013 (a)
2B.03	Size of Regulatory Signs	Increased sign sizes and other 2003 MUTCD revisions to Table 2B-1 (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.09	YIELD Sign Applications	Changes in YIELD sign application criteria from the 1988 MUTCD to the 2003 MUTCD (*)	January 17, 2011 (a)
2B.10	STOP Sign or YIELD Sign Placement	Signs mounted on the back of STOP or YIELD signs should not obscure shape of STOP sign, with exception for DO NOT ENTER signs (2003 MUTCD Sections 2B.06 and 2B.10) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.11	Yield Here To Pedestrians Signs and Stop Here For Pedestrians Signs (R1-5 Series)	New Section 2B.11 in the 2003 MUTCD (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.13	Speed Limit Sign (R2-1)	Color of changeable message legend of YOUR SPEED legend	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.26	Reversible Lane Control Signs (R3-9e through R3-9i)	Removal of the R3-9c and R3-9e signs that had been included in the 2000 MUTCD (2003 MUTCD Section 2B.25)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.40	ONE WAY Signs (R6-1, R6-2)	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for the number and locations of ONE WAY signs	December 31, 2019
2B.55	Photo Enforced Signs and Plaques (R10-18, R10-19P, R10-19aP)	New signs (2003 MUTCD Section 2B.46) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.04	Size of Warning Signs	New sizes in the 2003 MUTCD for the W1 Series arrow signs, the W12-2a low clearance signs, the W7 Series runaway truck signs, and the W10-1 advance grade crossing sign (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.06 thru 2C.14	Horizontal Alignment Warning Signs	Revised requirements in the 2009 MUTCD regarding the use of various horizontal alignment signs	December 31, 2019
2C.13	Truck Rollover Warning Sign (W1-13)	New W1-13 sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.11)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.20	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2)	Elimination of symbol sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.16)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.30	PAVEMENT ENDS Sign (W8-3)	Removal of symbol sign (2000 MUTCD Section 2C.23)	January 17, 2011 (a)
2C.38	Reduced Speed Limit Ahead Signs (W3-5, W3-5a)	Removal of R2-5 Series Reduced Speed Ahead signs and use of W3-5 or W3-5a warning signs instead (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.30)	December 22, 2018 (b)
2C.40	Merge Signs (W4-1, W4-5)	New Entering Roadway Merge sign (W4-5) (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.31)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.41	Added Lane Signs (W4-3, W4-6)	New Entering Roadway Added Lane sign (W4-6) (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.32)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.42	Lane Ends Signs (W4-2, W9-1, W9-2)	New design of W4-2 sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.33)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.46	Intersection Warning Signs (W2-1 through W2-8)	New design of Circular Intersection (W2-6) sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.37)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.49	Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs	New symbol signs W11-1, W11-5, W11-5a, W11-6, W11-11, and W11-14 (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.40)	December 22, 2013 (b)

Table I-2. Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA (Sheet 2 of 3)

2009 MUTCD Section Number(s)	2009 MUTCD Section Title	Specific Provision	Compliance Date
2C.50	Non-Vehicular Warning Signs	Elimination of crosswalk lines from crossing signs and use of diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) supplemental plaque if at the crossing (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.41)	January 17, 2011 (a)(b)
2C.61	PHOTO ENFORCED Plaque (W16-10P)	New plaque (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.53) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.63	Object Marker Design and Placement Height	Width of stripes on Type 3 striped marker (2003 MUTCD Section 3C.01)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2D.43	Street Name Signs (D3-1 or D3-1a)	6-inch letter height for lettering on post-mounted Street Name signs (except on multi-lane streets with speed limits greater than 40 mph) (2000 MUTCD Section 2D.38)	January 9, 2012 (a)
2D.43	Street Name Signs (D3-1 or D3-1a)	8-inch letter height on post-mounted signs on multi-lane streets with speed limits greater than 40 mph and 12-inch letter height on overhead signs (2003 MUTCD Section 2D.38)	December 22, 2018 (b)
2D.44	Advance Street Name Signs (D3-2)	Requirements of new Section 2D.39 in the 2003 MUTCD	December 22, 2018 (b)
2D.45	Signing on Conventional Roads on Approaches to Interchanges	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for multi-lane approaches to interchanges to have guide signs to identify which direction of turn is to be made for access to each direction of the freeway or expressway	December 31, 2019
2E.31, 2E.33, and 2E.36	Plaques for Left-Hand Exits	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD to use E1-5aP and E1-5bP plaques for left-hand exits	December 31, 2014
2G.01 through 2G.07	Regulatory Signs for Preferential Lanes	Requirements for regulatory signs for preferential lanes (2003 MUTCD Sections 2B.26 through 2B.28) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2G.11 through 2G.15	Preferential Lane Guide Signs	New Section 2E.59 in the 2003 MUTCD (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2H.02, 2H.03	Reference Location Signs, Intermediate Reference Location Signs, and Enhanced Reference Location Signs	Location and spacing of Reference Location signs and design of Intermediate Reference Location signs (2003 MUTCD Sections 2D.46 and 2E.54)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2I.07	Radio Information Signing	New Channel 9 Monitored (D12-3) sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2D.45)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2I.08	TRAVEL INFO CALL 511 Signs (D12-5 and D12-5a)	New TRAVEL INFO CALL 511 Sign (D12-5) (2003 MUTCD Section 2D.45)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2J.05	Size of Lettering	Minimum height of letters and numerals on Specific Service signs (2000 MUTCD Section 2F.05)	January 17, 2011 (a)
2N.03	Evacuation Route Signs (EM-1 and EM-1a)	New design and size of EM-1 sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2I.03)	December 22, 2018 (b)
3B.04, 3B.05	White Longitudinal Pavement Markings	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for dotted lane lines for dropped lanes and for acceleration, deceleration, and auxiliary lanes	December 31, 2016 or resurfacing, whichever occurs first
3B.18	Crosswalk Markings	Gap between transverse lines of a crosswalk (2003 MUTCD Section 3B.17)	December 22, 2013 (b)
4D.01	General	Location of signalized midblock crosswalks	December 22, 2013 (b)
4D.26	Yellow Change and Red Clearance Intervals	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that durations of yellow change and red clearance intervals shall be determined using engineering practices	December 31, 2014, or when timing adjustments are made to the individual intersection and/or corridor, whichever occurs first
4D.31	Flashing Operation—Transition Out of Flashing Mode	Duration of steady red clearance interval in change from red-red flashing mode to steady (stop-and-go) mode (2003 MUTCD Section 4D.12)	December 22, 2013 (b)
4E.06	Pedestrian Intervals and Signal Phases	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that the pedestrian change interval shall not extend into the red clearance interval and shall be followed by a buffer interval of at least 3 seconds	December 31, 2014, or when timing adjustments are made to the individual intersection and/or corridor, whichever occurs first
4E.07	Countdown Pedestrian Signals	Pedestrian countdown hardware requirements	December 22, 2013 (b)

Table I-2. Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA (Sheet 3 of 3)

2009 MUTCD Section Number(s)	2009 MUTCD Section Title	Specific Provision	Compliance Date
5C.05	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2)	Elimination of symbol sign	December 22, 2013 (b)
6D.03	Worker Safety Considerations	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that all workers within the right-of-way shall wear high-visibility apparel	December 31, 2011
6E.02	High-Visibility Safety Apparel	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that all flaggers within the right-of-way shall wear high-visibility apparel	December 31, 2011
7B.11	School Advance Crossing Assembly	Use of AHEAD (W16-9P) plaque or distance plaque (W16-2P or W16-2aP) (2000 MUTCD Section 7B.08)	January 17, 2011 (a)
7B.12	School Crossing Assembly	Elimination of crosswalk lines from crossing signs and use of diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) supplemental plaque (2000 MUTCD Sections 7B.08 and 7B.09)	January 17, 2011 (a)
7B.16	Reduced School Speed Limit Ahead Sign (S4-5, S4-5a)	Removal of R2-5 Series Reduced Speed Ahead signs and use of S4-5 or S4-5a warning signs instead (2003 MUTCD Section 7B.12)	December 22, 2018 (b)
7D.04	Uniform of Adult Crossing Guards	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for high-visibility apparel for adult crossing guards	December 31, 2011
8B.03	Grade Crossing (Crossbuck) Sign (R15-1) and Number of Tracks Plaque (R15-2P) at Active and Passive Grade Crossings	Retroreflective strip on crossbuck support (2000 MUTCD Section 8B.02) (*)	January 17, 2011 (a)
8B.04	Crossbuck Assemblies with YIELD or STOP Signs at Passive Grade Crossings	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for the use of STOP or YIELD signs with Crossbuck signs at passive grade crossings	December 31, 2019
8B.19 and 8C.02 through 8C.05	LRT Approaching-Activated Blank-Out Warning Sign, Flashing Light Signals, and Automatic Gates	Automatic gates, flashing-light signals, and blank-out signs at highway-LRT crossings per Part 10 of the 2000 MUTCD (*)	January 17, 2011 (a)
8C.09	Traffic Control Signals at or Near Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	Pre-signals (2003 MUTCD Section 8D.07)	December 22, 2013 (b)
8C.12	Grade Crossings Within or In Close Proximity to Circular Intersections	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for study of grade crossings near roundabouts	December 31, 2014
9B.18	Bicycle Warning and Combined Bicycle/Pedestrian Signs (W11-1 and W11-15)	Elimination of crosswalk lines from crossing signs and use of diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) supplemental plaque if at the crossing (2000 MUTCD Section 9B.15)	January 17, 2011 (a)

Notes: Unless otherwise noted, dates are as established in the Final Rule for the 2009 MUTCD.

(a) Date established in the Final Rule for the 2000 MUTCD

(b) Date established in the Final Rule for the 2003 MUTCD

(c) Date established in the Final Rule for Revision 2 of the 2003 MUTCD

(*) Provisions may have been revised in the 2009 MUTCD

PART 4

HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS

CHAPTER 4A. GENERAL

Section 4A.01 Types

Support:

- 01 The following types and uses of highway traffic signals are discussed in Part 4: traffic control signals; pedestrian signals; hybrid beacons; emergency-vehicle signals; traffic control signals for one-lane, two-way facilities; traffic control signals for freeway entrance ramps; traffic control signals for movable bridges; toll plaza traffic signals; flashing beacons; lane-use control signals; and in-roadway lights.

Section 4A.02 Definitions Relating to Highway Traffic Signals

Support:

- 01 Definitions and acronyms pertaining to Part 4 are provided in Sections 1A.13 and 1A.14.

CHAPTER 4B. TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS—GENERAL

Section 4B.01 General

Support:

- 01 Words such as pedestrians and bicyclists are used redundantly in selected Sections of Part 4 to encourage sensitivity to these elements of “traffic.”
- 02 Standards for traffic control signals are important because traffic control signals need to attract the attention of a variety of road users, including those who are older, those with impaired vision, as well as those who are fatigued or distracted, or who are not expecting to encounter a signal at a particular location.

Section 4B.02 Basis of Installation or Removal of Traffic Control Signals

Guidance:

- 01 *The selection and use of traffic control signals should be based on an engineering study of roadway, traffic, and other conditions.*

Support:

- 02 A careful analysis of traffic operations, pedestrian and bicyclist needs, and other factors at a large number of signalized and unsignalized locations, coupled with engineering judgment, has provided a series of signal warrants, described in Chapter 4C, that define the minimum conditions under which installing traffic control signals might be justified.

Guidance:

- 03 *Engineering judgment should be applied in the review of operating traffic control signals to determine whether the type of installation and the timing program meet the current requirements of all forms of traffic.*
- 04 *If changes in traffic patterns eliminate the need for a traffic control signal, consideration should be given to removing it and replacing it with appropriate alternative traffic control devices, if any are needed.*
- 05 *If the engineering study indicates that the traffic control signal is no longer justified, and a decision is made to remove the signal, removal should be accomplished using the following steps:*
 - A. *Determine the appropriate traffic control to be used after removal of the signal.*
 - B. *Remove any sight-distance restrictions as necessary.*
 - C. *Inform the public of the removal study.*
 - D. *Flash or cover the signal heads for a minimum of 90 days, and install the appropriate stop control or other traffic control devices.*
 - E. *Remove the signal if the engineering data collected during the removal study period confirms that the signal is no longer needed.*

Option:

- 06 Because Items C, D, and E in Paragraph 5 are not relevant when a temporary traffic control signal (see Section 4D.32) is removed, a temporary traffic control signal may be removed immediately after Items A and B are completed.
- 07 Instead of total removal of a traffic control signal, the poles, controller cabinet, and cables may remain in place after removal of the signal heads for continued analysis.

Section 4B.03 Advantages and Disadvantages of Traffic Control Signals

Support:

- 01 When properly used, traffic control signals are valuable devices for the control of vehicular and pedestrian traffic. They assign the right-of-way to the various traffic movements and thereby profoundly influence traffic flow.
- 02 Traffic control signals that are properly designed, located, operated, and maintained will have one or more of the following advantages:
 - A. They provide for the orderly movement of traffic.
 - B. They increase the traffic-handling capacity of the intersection if:
 - 1. Proper physical layouts and control measures are used, and
 - 2. The signal operational parameters are reviewed and updated (if needed) on a regular basis (as engineering judgment determines that significant traffic flow and/or land use changes have occurred) to maximize the ability of the traffic control signal to satisfy current traffic demands.
 - C. They reduce the frequency and severity of certain types of crashes, especially right-angle collisions.
 - D. They are coordinated to provide for continuous or nearly continuous movement of traffic at a definite speed along a given route under favorable conditions.
 - E. They are used to interrupt heavy traffic at intervals to permit other traffic, vehicular or pedestrian, to cross.

- 03 Traffic control signals are often considered a panacea for all traffic problems at intersections. This belief has led to traffic control signals being installed at many locations where they are not needed, adversely affecting the safety and efficiency of vehicular, bicycle, and pedestrian traffic.
- 04 Traffic control signals, even when justified by traffic and roadway conditions, can be ill-designed, ineffectively placed, improperly operated, or poorly maintained. Improper or unjustified traffic control signals can result in one or more of the following disadvantages:
- A. Excessive delay,
 - B. Excessive disobedience of the signal indications,
 - C. Increased use of less adequate routes as road users attempt to avoid the traffic control signals, and
 - D. Significant increases in the frequency of collisions (especially rear-end collisions).

Section 4B.04 Alternatives to Traffic Control Signals

Guidance:

- 01 *Since vehicular delay and the frequency of some types of crashes are sometimes greater under traffic signal control than under STOP sign control, consideration should be given to providing alternatives to traffic control signals even if one or more of the signal warrants has been satisfied.*

Option:

- 02 These alternatives may include, but are not limited to, the following:
- A. Installing signs along the major street to warn road users approaching the intersection;
 - B. Relocating the stop line(s) and making other changes to improve the sight distance at the intersection;
 - C. Installing measures designed to reduce speeds on the approaches;
 - D. Installing a flashing beacon at the intersection to supplement STOP sign control;
 - E. Installing flashing beacons on warning signs in advance of a STOP sign controlled intersection on major-and/or minor-street approaches;
 - F. Adding one or more lanes on a minor-street approach to reduce the number of vehicles per lane on the approach;
 - G. Revising the geometrics at the intersection to channelize vehicular movements and reduce the time required for a vehicle to complete a movement, which could also assist pedestrians;
 - H. Revising the geometrics at the intersection to add pedestrian median refuge islands and/or curb extensions;
 - I. Installing roadway lighting if a disproportionate number of crashes occur at night;
 - J. Restricting one or more turning movements, perhaps on a time-of-day basis, if alternate routes are available;
 - K. If the warrant is satisfied, installing multi-way STOP sign control;
 - L. Installing a pedestrian hybrid beacon (see Chapter 4F) or In-Roadway Warning Lights (see Chapter 4N) if pedestrian safety is the major concern;
 - M. Installing a roundabout; and
 - N. Employing other alternatives, depending on conditions at the intersection.

Section 4B.05 Adequate Roadway Capacity

Support:

- 01 The delays inherent in the alternating assignment of right-of-way at intersections controlled by traffic control signals can frequently be reduced by widening the major roadway, the minor roadway, or both roadways. Widening the minor roadway often benefits the operations on the major roadway, because it reduces the green time that must be assigned to minor-roadway traffic. In urban areas, the effect of widening can be achieved by eliminating parking on intersection approaches. It is desirable to have at least two lanes for moving traffic on each approach to a signalized location. Additional width on the departure side of the intersection, as well as on the approach side, will sometimes be needed to clear traffic through the intersection effectively.

Guidance:

- 02 *Adequate roadway capacity should be provided at a signalized location. Before an intersection is widened, the additional green time pedestrians need to cross the widened roadways should be considered to determine if it will exceed the green time saved through improved vehicular flow.*
- 03 *Other methods of increasing the roadway capacity at signalized locations that do not involve roadway widening, such as revisions to the pavement markings and the careful evaluation of proper lane-use assignments (including varying the lane use by time of day), should be considered where appropriate. Such consideration should include evaluation of any impacts that changes to pavement markings and lane assignments will have on bicycle travel.*

CHAPTER 4C. TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNAL NEEDS STUDIES

Section 4C.01 Studies and Factors for Justifying Traffic Control Signals

Standard:

- 01 An engineering study of traffic conditions, pedestrian characteristics, and physical characteristics of the location shall be performed to determine whether installation of a traffic control signal is justified at a particular location.
- 02 The investigation of the need for a traffic control signal shall include an analysis of factors related to the existing operation and safety at the study location and the potential to improve these conditions, and the applicable factors contained in the following traffic signal warrants:
- Warrant 1, Eight-Hour Vehicular Volume
 - Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume
 - Warrant 3, Peak Hour
 - Warrant 4, Pedestrian Volume
 - Warrant 5, School Crossing
 - Warrant 6, Coordinated Signal System
 - Warrant 7, Crash Experience
 - Warrant 8, Roadway Network
 - Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing

- 03 The satisfaction of a traffic signal warrant or warrants shall not in itself require the installation of a traffic control signal.

Support:

- 04 Sections 8C.09 and 8C.10 contain information regarding the use of traffic control signals instead of gates and/or flashing-light signals at highway-rail grade crossings and highway-light rail transit grade crossings, respectively.
- Guidance:*
- 05 A traffic control signal should not be installed unless one or more of the factors described in this Chapter are met.
- 06 A traffic control signal should not be installed unless an engineering study indicates that installing a traffic control signal will improve the overall safety and/or operation of the intersection.
- 07 A traffic control signal should not be installed if it will seriously disrupt progressive traffic flow.
- 08 The study should consider the effects of the right-turn vehicles from the minor-street approaches. Engineering judgment should be used to determine what, if any, portion of the right-turn traffic is subtracted from the minor-street traffic count when evaluating the count against the signal warrants listed in Paragraph 2.
- 09 Engineering judgment should also be used in applying various traffic signal warrants to cases where approaches consist of one lane plus one left-turn or right-turn lane. The site-specific traffic characteristics should dictate whether an approach is considered as one lane or two lanes. For example, for an approach with one lane for through and right-turning traffic plus a left-turn lane, if engineering judgment indicates that it should be considered a one-lane approach because the traffic using the left-turn lane is minor, the total traffic volume approaching the intersection should be applied against the signal warrants as a one-lane approach. The approach should be considered two lanes if approximately half of the traffic on the approach turns left and the left-turn lane is of sufficient length to accommodate all left-turn vehicles.
- 10 Similar engineering judgment and rationale should be applied to a street approach with one through/left-turn lane plus a right-turn lane. In this case, the degree of conflict of minor-street right-turn traffic with traffic on the major street should be considered. Thus, right-turn traffic should not be included in the minor-street volume if the movement enters the major street with minimal conflict. The approach should be evaluated as a one-lane approach with only the traffic volume in the through/left-turn lane considered.
- 11 At a location that is under development or construction and where it is not possible to obtain a traffic count that would represent future traffic conditions, hourly volumes should be estimated as part of an engineering study for comparison with traffic signal warrants. Except for locations where the engineering study uses the satisfaction of Warrant 8 to justify a signal, a traffic control signal installed under projected conditions should have an engineering study done within 1 year of putting the signal into stop-and-go operation to determine if the signal is justified. If not justified, the signal should be taken out of stop-and-go operation or removed.
- 12 For signal warrant analysis, a location with a wide median, even if the median width is greater than 30 feet, should be considered as one intersection.

Option:

- 13 At an intersection with a high volume of left-turn traffic from the major street, the signal warrant analysis may be performed in a manner that considers the higher of the major-street left-turn volumes as the “minor-street” volume and the corresponding single direction of opposing traffic on the major street as the “major-street” volume.
- 14 For signal warrants requiring conditions to be present for a certain number of hours in order to be satisfied, any four sequential 15-minute periods may be considered as 1 hour if the separate 1-hour periods used in the warrant analysis do not overlap each other and both the major-street volume and the minor-street volume are for the same specific one-hour periods.
- 15 For signal warrant analysis, bicyclists may be counted as either vehicles or pedestrians.

Support:

- 16 When performing a signal warrant analysis, bicyclists riding in the street with other vehicular traffic are usually counted as vehicles and bicyclists who are clearly using pedestrian facilities are usually counted as pedestrians.

Option:

- 17 Engineering study data may include the following:
 - A. The number of vehicles entering the intersection in each hour from each approach during 12 hours of an average day. It is desirable that the hours selected contain the greatest percentage of the 24-hour traffic volume.
 - B. Vehicular volumes for each traffic movement from each approach, classified by vehicle type (heavy trucks, passenger cars and light trucks, public-transit vehicles, and, in some locations, bicycles), during each 15-minute period of the 2 hours in the morning and 2 hours in the afternoon during which total traffic entering the intersection is greatest.
 - C. Pedestrian volume counts on each crosswalk during the same periods as the vehicular counts in Item B and during hours of highest pedestrian volume. Where young, elderly, and/or persons with physical or visual disabilities need special consideration, the pedestrians and their crossing times may be classified by general observation.
 - D. Information about nearby facilities and activity centers that serve the young, elderly, and/or persons with disabilities, including requests from persons with disabilities for accessible crossing improvements at the location under study. These persons might not be adequately reflected in the pedestrian volume count if the absence of a signal restrains their mobility.
 - E. The posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on the uncontrolled approaches to the location.
 - F. A condition diagram showing details of the physical layout, including such features as intersection geometrics, channelization, grades, sight-distance restrictions, transit stops and routes, parking conditions, pavement markings, roadway lighting, driveways, nearby railroad crossings, distance to nearest traffic control signals, utility poles and fixtures, and adjacent land use.
 - G. A collision diagram showing crash experience by type, location, direction of movement, severity, weather, time of day, date, and day of week for at least 1 year.
- 18 The following data, which are desirable for a more precise understanding of the operation of the intersection, may be obtained during the periods described in Item B of Paragraph 17:
 - A. Vehicle-hours of stopped time delay determined separately for each approach.
 - B. The number and distribution of acceptable gaps in vehicular traffic on the major street for entrance from the minor street.
 - C. The posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on controlled approaches at a point near to the intersection but unaffected by the control.
 - D. Pedestrian delay time for at least two 30-minute peak pedestrian delay periods of an average weekday or like periods of a Saturday or Sunday.
 - E. Queue length on stop-controlled approaches.

Section 4C.02 Warrant 1, Eight-Hour Vehicular Volume**Support:**

- 01 The Minimum Vehicular Volume, Condition A, is intended for application at locations where a large volume of intersecting traffic is the principal reason to consider installing a traffic control signal.
- 02 The Interruption of Continuous Traffic, Condition B, is intended for application at locations where Condition A is not satisfied and where the traffic volume on a major street is so heavy that traffic on a minor intersecting street suffers excessive delay or conflict in entering or crossing the major street.
- 03 It is intended that Warrant 1 be treated as a single warrant. If Condition A is satisfied, then Warrant 1 is satisfied and analyses of Condition B and the combination of Conditions A and B are not needed. Similarly, if Condition B is satisfied, then Warrant 1 is satisfied and an analysis of the combination of Conditions A and B is not needed.

Standard:

- 04 The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that one of the following conditions exist for each of any 8 hours of an average day:

- A. The vehicles per hour given in both of the 100 percent columns of Condition A in Table 4C-1 exist on the major-street and the higher-volume minor-street approaches, respectively, to the intersection; or
- B. The vehicles per hour given in both of the 100 percent columns of Condition B in Table 4C-1 exist on the major-street and the higher-volume minor-street approaches, respectively, to the intersection.

In applying each condition the major-street and minor-street volumes shall be for the same 8 hours. On the minor street, the higher volume shall not be required to be on the same approach during each of these 8 hours.

Option:

- 05 If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on the major street exceeds 40 mph, or if the intersection lies within the built-up area of an isolated community having a population of less than 10,000, the traffic volumes in the 70 percent columns in Table 4C-1 may be used in place of the 100 percent columns.

Guidance:

- 06 The combination of Conditions A and B is intended for application at locations where Condition A is not satisfied and Condition B is not satisfied and should be applied only after an adequate trial of other alternatives that could cause less delay and inconvenience to traffic has failed to solve the traffic problems.

Standard:

- 07 The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that both of the following conditions exist for each of any 8 hours of an average day:

- A. The vehicles per hour given in both of the 80 percent columns of Condition A in Table 4C-1 exist on the major-street and the higher-volume minor-street approaches, respectively, to the intersection; and
- B. The vehicles per hour given in both of the 80 percent columns of Condition B in Table 4C-1 exist on the major-street and the higher-volume minor-street approaches, respectively, to the intersection.

These major-street and minor-street volumes shall be for the same 8 hours for each condition; however, the 8 hours satisfied in Condition A shall not be required to be the same 8 hours satisfied in Condition B. On the minor street, the higher volume shall not be required to be on the same approach during each of the 8 hours.

Table 4C-1. Warrant 1, Eight-Hour Vehicular Volume

Condition A—Minimum Vehicular Volume

Number of lanes for moving traffic on each approach		Vehicles per hour on major street (total of both approaches)				Vehicles per hour on higher-volume minor-street approach (one direction only)			
Major Street	Minor Street	100% ^a	80% ^b	70% ^c	56% ^d	100% ^a	80% ^b	70% ^c	56% ^d
1	1	500	400	350	280	150	120	105	84
2 or more	1	600	480	420	336	150	120	105	84
2 or more	2 or more	600	480	420	336	200	160	140	112
1	2 or more	500	400	350	280	200	160	140	112

Condition B—Interruption of Continuous Traffic

Number of lanes for moving traffic on each approach		Vehicles per hour on major street (total of both approaches)				Vehicles per hour on higher-volume minor-street approach (one direction only)			
Major Street	Minor Street	100% ^a	80% ^b	70% ^c	56% ^d	100% ^a	80% ^b	70% ^c	56% ^d
1	1	750	600	525	420	75	60	53	42
2 or more	1	900	720	630	504	75	60	53	42
2 or more	2 or more	900	720	630	504	100	80	70	56
1	2 or more	750	600	525	420	100	80	70	56

^a Basic minimum hourly volume

^b Used for combination of Conditions A and B after adequate trial of other remedial measures

^c May be used when the major-street speed exceeds 40 mph or in an isolated community with a population of less than 10,000

^d May be used for combination of Conditions A and B after adequate trial of other remedial measures when the major-street speed exceeds 40 mph or in an isolated community with a population of less than 10,000

Option:

- 08 If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on the major street exceeds 40 mph, or if the intersection lies within the built-up area of an isolated community having a population of less than 10,000, the traffic volumes in the 56 percent columns in Table 4C-1 may be used in place of the 80 percent columns.

Section 4C.03 Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume

Support:

- 01 The Four-Hour Vehicular Volume signal warrant conditions are intended to be applied where the volume of intersecting traffic is the principal reason to consider installing a traffic control signal.

Standard:

- 02 **The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that, for each of any 4 hours of an average day, the plotted points representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding vehicles per hour on the higher-volume minor-street approach (one direction only) all fall above the applicable curve in Figure 4C-1 for the existing combination of approach lanes. On the minor street, the higher volume shall not be required to be on the same approach during each of these 4 hours.**

Option:

- 03 If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on the major street exceeds 40 mph, or if the intersection lies within the built-up area of an isolated community having a population of less than 10,000, Figure 4C-2 may be used in place of Figure 4C-1.

Section 4C.04 Warrant 3, Peak Hour

Support:

- 01 The Peak Hour signal warrant is intended for use at a location where traffic conditions are such that for a minimum of 1 hour of an average day, the minor-street traffic suffers undue delay when entering or crossing the major street.

Standard:

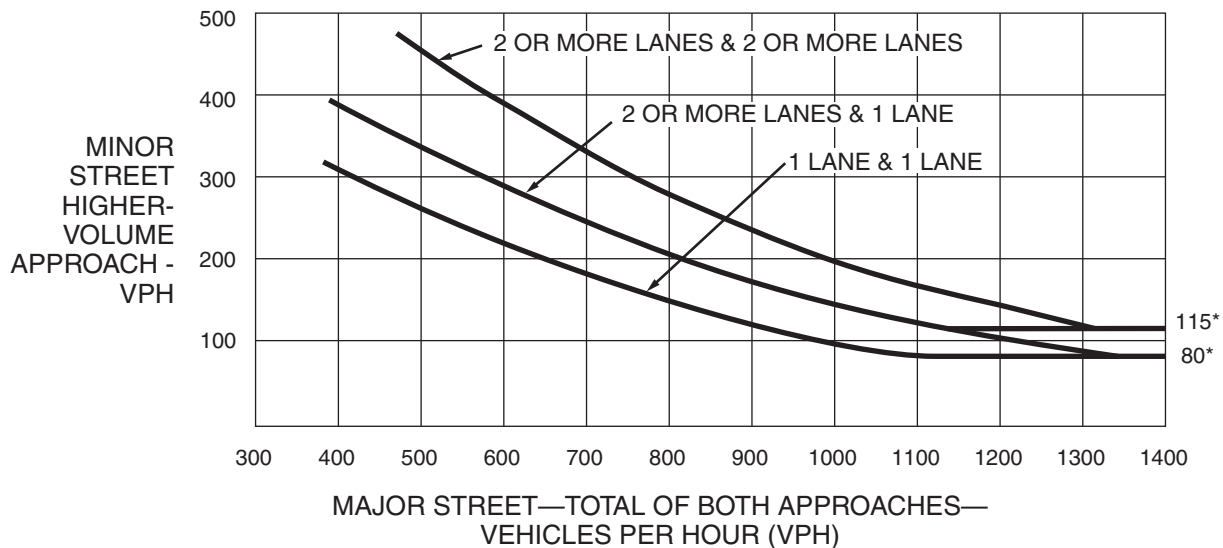
- 02 **This signal warrant shall be applied only in unusual cases, such as office complexes, manufacturing plants, industrial complexes, or high-occupancy vehicle facilities that attract or discharge large numbers of vehicles over a short time.**
- 03 **The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that the criteria in either of the following two categories are met:**
- A. If all three of the following conditions exist for the same 1 hour (any four consecutive 15-minute periods) of an average day:**
 - 1. The total stopped time delay experienced by the traffic on one minor-street approach (one direction only) controlled by a STOP sign equals or exceeds: 4 vehicle-hours for a one-lane approach or 5 vehicle-hours for a two-lane approach; and**
 - 2. The volume on the same minor-street approach (one direction only) equals or exceeds 100 vehicles per hour for one moving lane of traffic or 150 vehicles per hour for two moving lanes; and**
 - 3. The total entering volume serviced during the hour equals or exceeds 650 vehicles per hour for intersections with three approaches or 800 vehicles per hour for intersections with four or more approaches.**
 - B. The plotted point representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding vehicles per hour on the higher-volume minor-street approach (one direction only) for 1 hour (any four consecutive 15-minute periods) of an average day falls above the applicable curve in Figure 4C-3 for the existing combination of approach lanes.**

Option:

- 04 If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on the major street exceeds 40 mph, or if the intersection lies within the built-up area of an isolated community having a population of less than 10,000, Figure 4C-4 may be used in place of Figure 4C-3 to evaluate the criteria in the second category of the Standard.
- 05 If this warrant is the only warrant met and a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study, the traffic control signal may be operated in the flashing mode during the hours that the volume criteria of this warrant are not met.

Guidance:

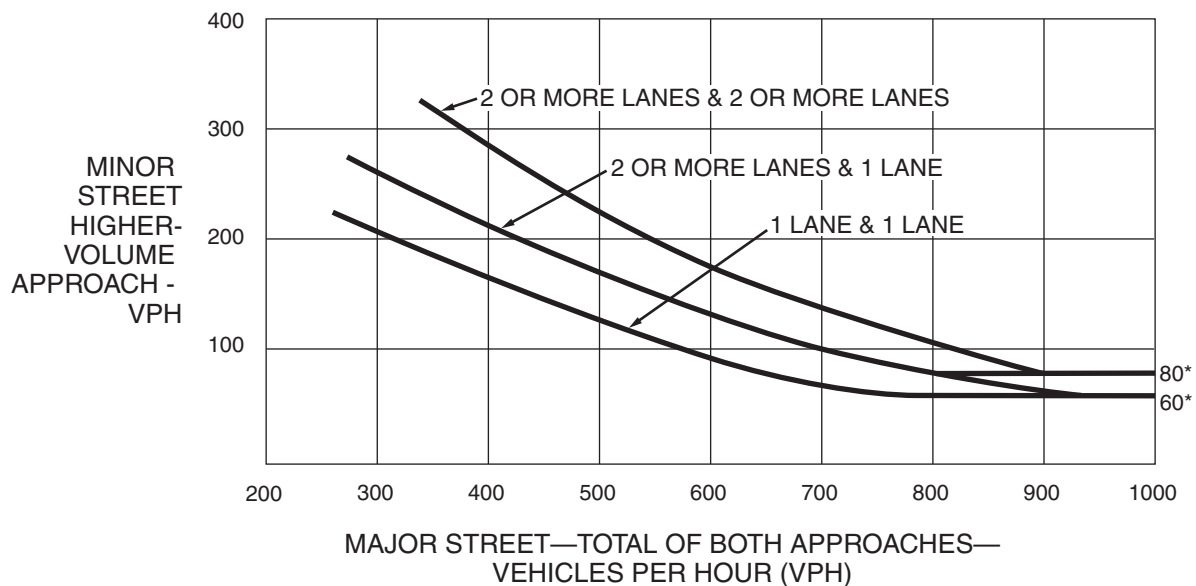
- 06 *If this warrant is the only warrant met and a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study, the traffic control signal should be traffic-actuated.*

Figure 4C-1. Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume

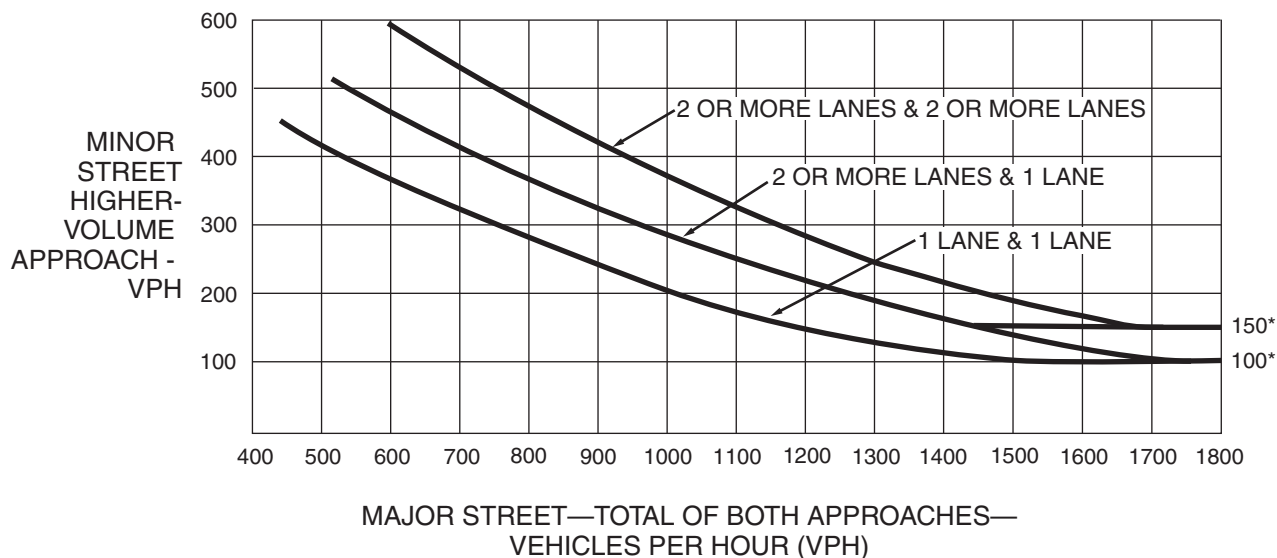
*Note: 115 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with two or more lanes and 80 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with one lane.

Figure 4C-2. Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume (70% Factor)

(COMMUNITY LESS THAN 10,000 POPULATION OR ABOVE 40 MPH ON MAJOR STREET)



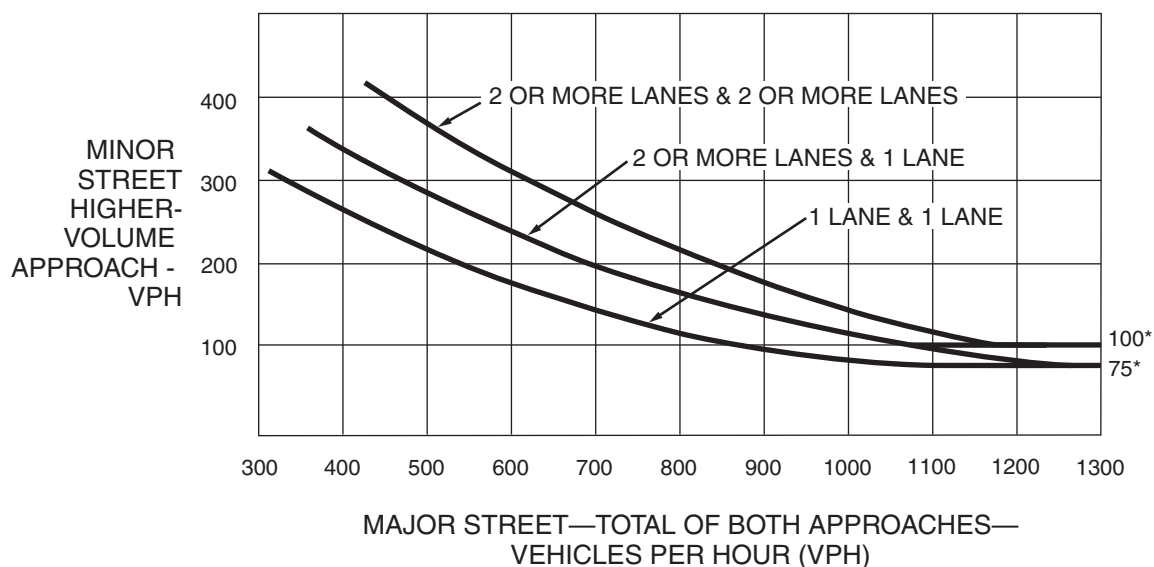
*Note: 80 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with two or more lanes and 60 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with one lane.

Figure 4C-3. Warrant 3, Peak Hour

*Note: 150 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with two or more lanes and 100 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with one lane.

Figure 4C-4. Warrant 3, Peak Hour (70% Factor)

(COMMUNITY LESS THAN 10,000 POPULATION OR ABOVE 40 MPH ON MAJOR STREET)



*Note: 100 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with two or more lanes and 75 vph applies as the lower threshold volume for a minor-street approach with one lane.

Section 4C.05 Warrant 4, Pedestrian Volume

Support:

- 01 The Pedestrian Volume signal warrant is intended for application where the traffic volume on a major street is so heavy that pedestrians experience excessive delay in crossing the major street.

Standard:

- 02 The need for a traffic control signal at an intersection or midblock crossing shall be considered if an engineering study finds that one of the following criteria is met:
- A. For each of any 4 hours of an average day, the plotted points representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding pedestrians per hour crossing the major street (total of all crossings) all fall above the curve in Figure 4C-5; or
 - B. For 1 hour (any four consecutive 15-minute periods) of an average day, the plotted point representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding pedestrians per hour crossing the major street (total of all crossings) falls above the curve in Figure 4C-7.

Option:

- 03 If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on the major street exceeds 35 mph, or if the intersection lies within the built-up area of an isolated community having a population of less than 10,000, Figure 4C-6 may be used in place of Figure 4C-5 to evaluate Criterion A in Paragraph 2, and Figure 4C-8 may be used in place of Figure 4C-7 to evaluate Criterion B in Paragraph 2.

Standard:

- 04 The Pedestrian Volume signal warrant shall not be applied at locations where the distance to the nearest traffic control signal or STOP sign controlling the street that pedestrians desire to cross is less than 300 feet, unless the proposed traffic control signal will not restrict the progressive movement of traffic.
- 05 If this warrant is met and a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study, the traffic control signal shall be equipped with pedestrian signal heads complying with the provisions set forth in Chapter 4E.

Guidance:

- 06 If this warrant is met and a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study, then:
- A. If it is installed at an intersection or major driveway location, the traffic control signal should also control the minor-street or driveway traffic, should be traffic-actuated, and should include pedestrian detection.
 - B. If it is installed at a non-intersection crossing, the traffic control signal should be installed at least 100 feet from side streets or driveways that are controlled by STOP or YIELD signs, and should be pedestrian-actuated. If the traffic control signal is installed at a non-intersection crossing, at least one of the signal faces should be over the traveled way for each approach, parking and other sight obstructions should be prohibited for at least 100 feet in advance of and at least 20 feet beyond the crosswalk or site accommodations should be made through curb extensions or other techniques to provide adequate sight distance, and the installation should include suitable standard signs and pavement markings.
 - C. Furthermore, if it is installed within a signal system, the traffic control signal should be coordinated.

Option:

- 07 The criterion for the pedestrian volume crossing the major street may be reduced as much as 50 percent if the 15th-percentile crossing speed of pedestrians is less than 3.5 feet per second.
- 08 A traffic control signal may not be needed at the study location if adjacent coordinated traffic control signals consistently provide gaps of adequate length for pedestrians to cross the street.

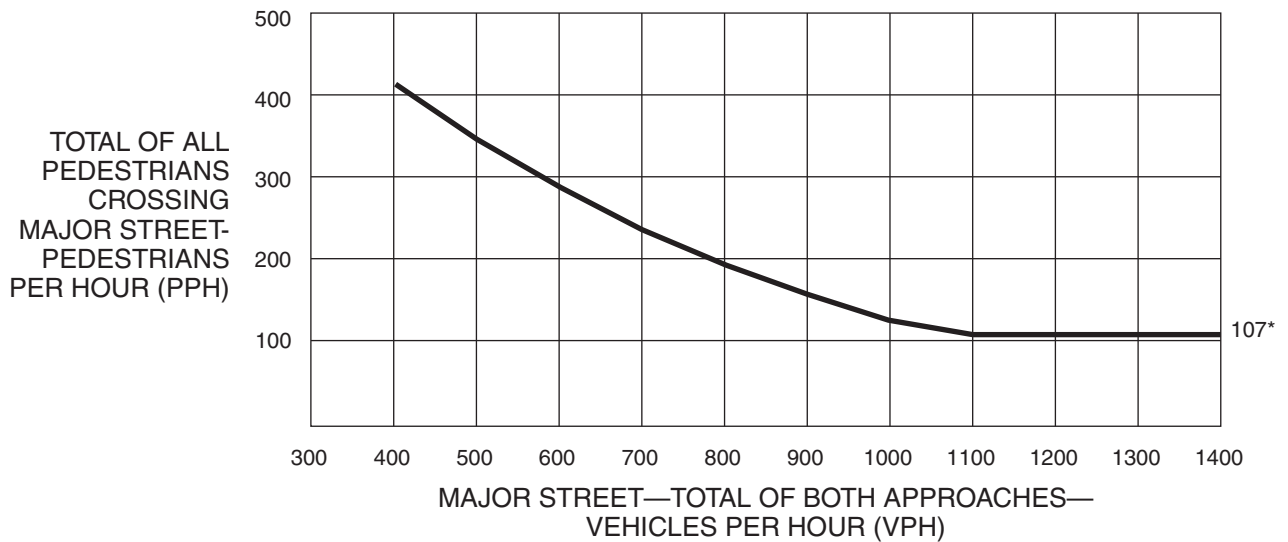
Section 4C.06 Warrant 5, School Crossing

Support:

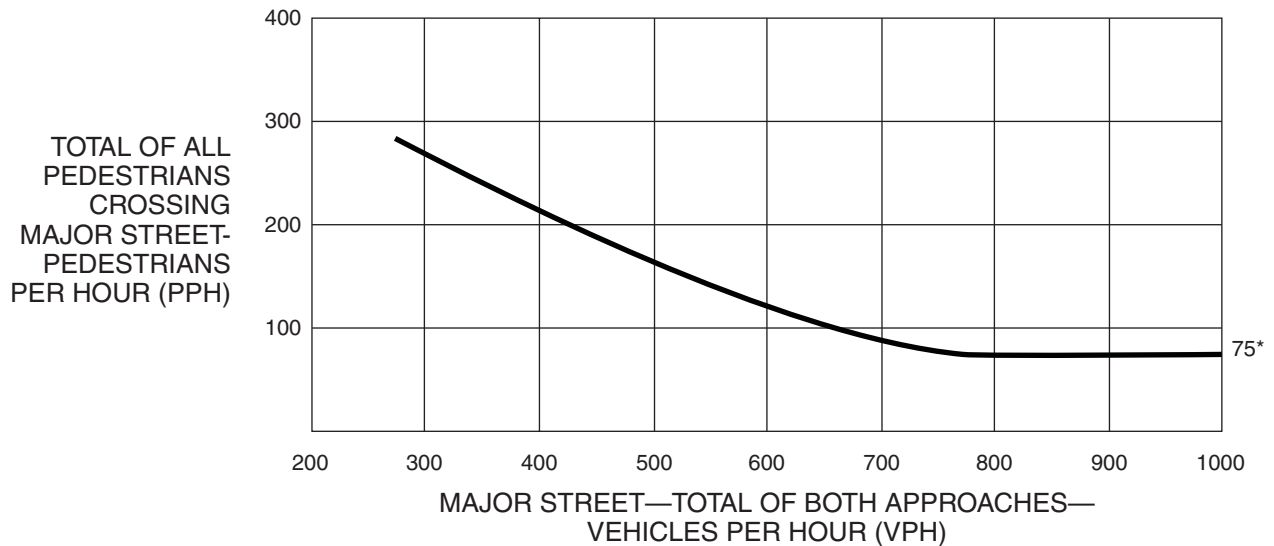
- 01 The School Crossing signal warrant is intended for application where the fact that schoolchildren cross the major street is the principal reason to consider installing a traffic control signal. For the purposes of this warrant, the word "schoolchildren" includes elementary through high school students.

Standard:

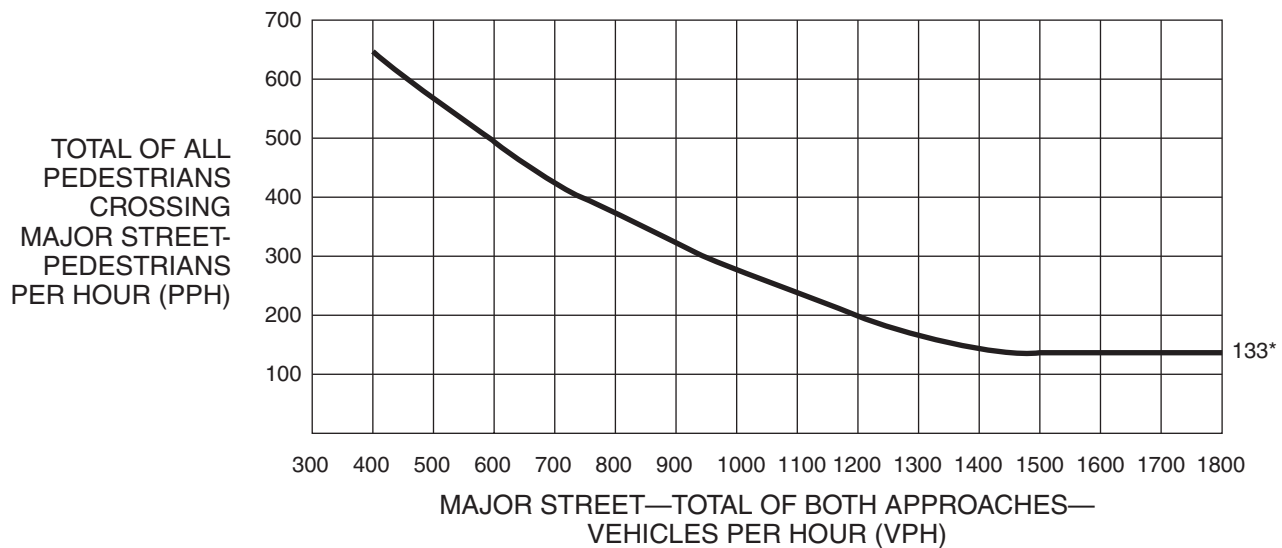
- 02 The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered when an engineering study of the frequency and adequacy of gaps in the vehicular traffic stream as related to the number and size of groups of schoolchildren at an established school crossing across the major street shows that the number of adequate gaps in the traffic stream during the period when the schoolchildren are using the crossing is less than the number of minutes in the same period (see Section 7A.03) and there are a minimum of 20 schoolchildren during the highest crossing hour.

Figure 4C-5. Warrant 4, Pedestrian Four-Hour Volume

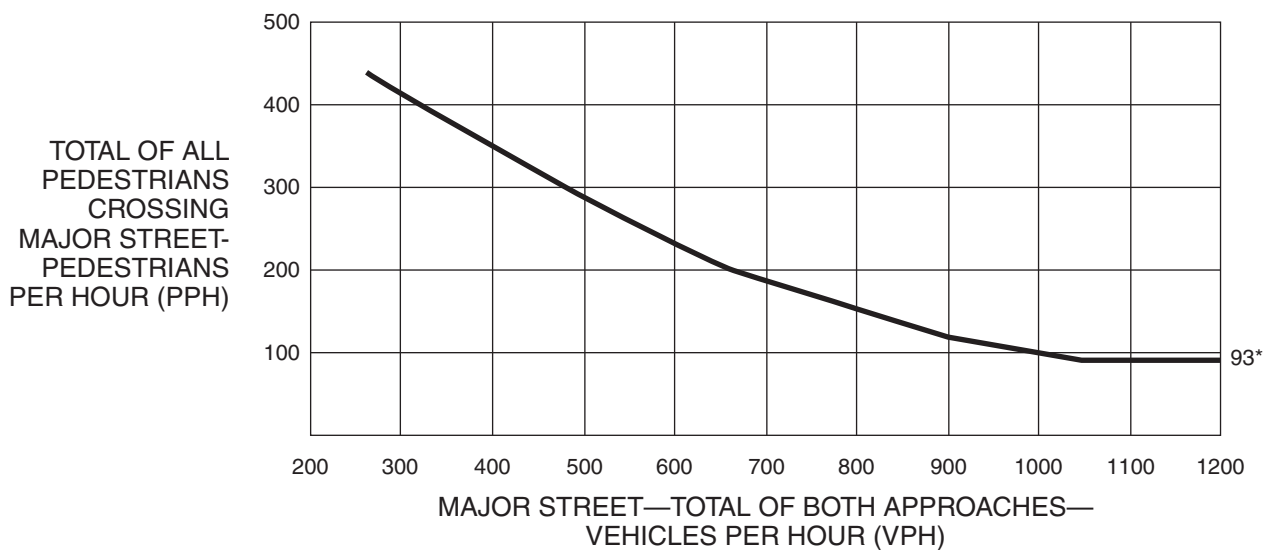
*Note: 107 pph applies as the lower threshold volume.

Figure 4C-6. Warrant 4, Pedestrian Four-Hour Volume (70% Factor)

*Note: 75 pph applies as the lower threshold volume.

Figure 4C-7. Warrant 4, Pedestrian Peak Hour

*Note: 133 pph applies as the lower threshold volume.

Figure 4C-8. Warrant 4, Pedestrian Peak Hour (70% Factor)

*Note: 93 pph applies as the lower threshold volume.

- 03 **Before a decision is made to install a traffic control signal, consideration shall be given to the implementation of other remedial measures, such as warning signs and flashers, school speed zones, school crossing guards, or a grade-separated crossing.**
- 04 **The School Crossing signal warrant shall not be applied at locations where the distance to the nearest traffic control signal along the major street is less than 300 feet, unless the proposed traffic control signal will not restrict the progressive movement of traffic.**

Guidance:

- 05 *If this warrant is met and a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study, then:*
- A. *If it is installed at an intersection or major driveway location, the traffic control signal should also control the minor-street or driveway traffic, should be traffic-actuated, and should include pedestrian detection.*
 - B. *If it is installed at a non-intersection crossing, the traffic control signal should be installed at least 100 feet from side streets or driveways that are controlled by STOP or YIELD signs, and should be pedestrian-actuated. If the traffic control signal is installed at a non-intersection crossing, at least one of the signal faces should be over the traveled way for each approach, parking and other sight obstructions should be prohibited for at least 100 feet in advance of and at least 20 feet beyond the crosswalk or site accommodations should be made through curb extensions or other techniques to provide adequate sight distance, and the installation should include suitable standard signs and pavement markings.*
 - C. *Furthermore, if it is installed within a signal system, the traffic control signal should be coordinated.*

Section 4C.07 Warrant 6, Coordinated Signal System

Support:

- 01 Progressive movement in a coordinated signal system sometimes necessitates installing traffic control signals at intersections where they would not otherwise be needed in order to maintain proper platooning of vehicles.

Standard:

- 02 **The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that one of the following criteria is met:**
- A. **On a one-way street or a street that has traffic predominantly in one direction, the adjacent traffic control signals are so far apart that they do not provide the necessary degree of vehicular platooning.**
 - B. **On a two-way street, adjacent traffic control signals do not provide the necessary degree of platooning and the proposed and adjacent traffic control signals will collectively provide a progressive operation.**

Guidance:

- 03 *The Coordinated Signal System signal warrant should not be applied where the resultant spacing of traffic control signals would be less than 1,000 feet.*

Section 4C.08 Warrant 7, Crash Experience

Support:

- 01 The Crash Experience signal warrant conditions are intended for application where the severity and frequency of crashes are the principal reasons to consider installing a traffic control signal.

Standard:

- 02 **The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that all of the following criteria are met:**
- A. **Adequate trial of alternatives with satisfactory observance and enforcement has failed to reduce the crash frequency; and**
 - B. **Five or more reported crashes, of types susceptible to correction by a traffic control signal, have occurred within a 12-month period, each crash involving personal injury or property damage apparently exceeding the applicable requirements for a reportable crash; and**
 - C. **For each of any 8 hours of an average day, the vehicles per hour (vph) given in both of the 80 percent columns of Condition A in Table 4C-1 (see Section 4C.02), or the vph in both of the 80 percent columns of Condition B in Table 4C-1 exists on the major-street and the higher-volume minor-street approach, respectively, to the intersection, or the volume of pedestrian traffic is not less than 80 percent of the requirements specified in the Pedestrian Volume warrant. These major-street and minor-street volumes shall be for the same 8 hours. On the minor street, the higher volume shall not be required to be on the same approach during each of the 8 hours.**

Option:

- 03 If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on the major street exceeds 40 mph, or if the intersection lies within the built-up area of an isolated community having a population of less than 10,000, the traffic volumes in the 56 percent columns in Table 4C-1 may be used in place of the 80 percent columns.

Section 4C.09 Warrant 8, Roadway Network

Support:

- 01 Installing a traffic control signal at some intersections might be justified to encourage concentration and organization of traffic flow on a roadway network.

Standard:

- 02 **The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that the common intersection of two or more major routes meets one or both of the following criteria:**
- A. **The intersection has a total existing, or immediately projected, entering volume of at least 1,000 vehicles per hour during the peak hour of a typical weekday and has 5-year projected traffic volumes, based on an engineering study, that meet one or more of Warrants 1, 2, and 3 during an average weekday; or**
 - B. **The intersection has a total existing or immediately projected entering volume of at least 1,000 vehicles per hour for each of any 5 hours of a non-normal business day (Saturday or Sunday).**
- 03 **A major route as used in this signal warrant shall have at least one of the following characteristics:**
- A. **It is part of the street or highway system that serves as the principal roadway network for through traffic flow.**
 - B. **It includes rural or suburban highways outside, entering, or traversing a city.**
 - C. **It appears as a major route on an official plan, such as a major street plan in an urban area traffic and transportation study.**

Section 4C.10 Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing

Support:

- 01 The Intersection Near a Grade Crossing signal warrant is intended for use at a location where none of the conditions described in the other eight traffic signal warrants are met, but the proximity to the intersection of a grade crossing on an intersection approach controlled by a STOP or YIELD sign is the principal reason to consider installing a traffic control signal.

Guidance:

- 02 *This signal warrant should be applied only after adequate consideration has been given to other alternatives or after a trial of an alternative has failed to alleviate the safety concerns associated with the grade crossing. Among the alternatives that should be considered or tried are:*
- A. *Providing additional pavement that would enable vehicles to clear the track or that would provide space for an evasive maneuver, or*
 - B. *Reassigning the stop controls at the intersection to make the approach across the track a non-stopping approach.*

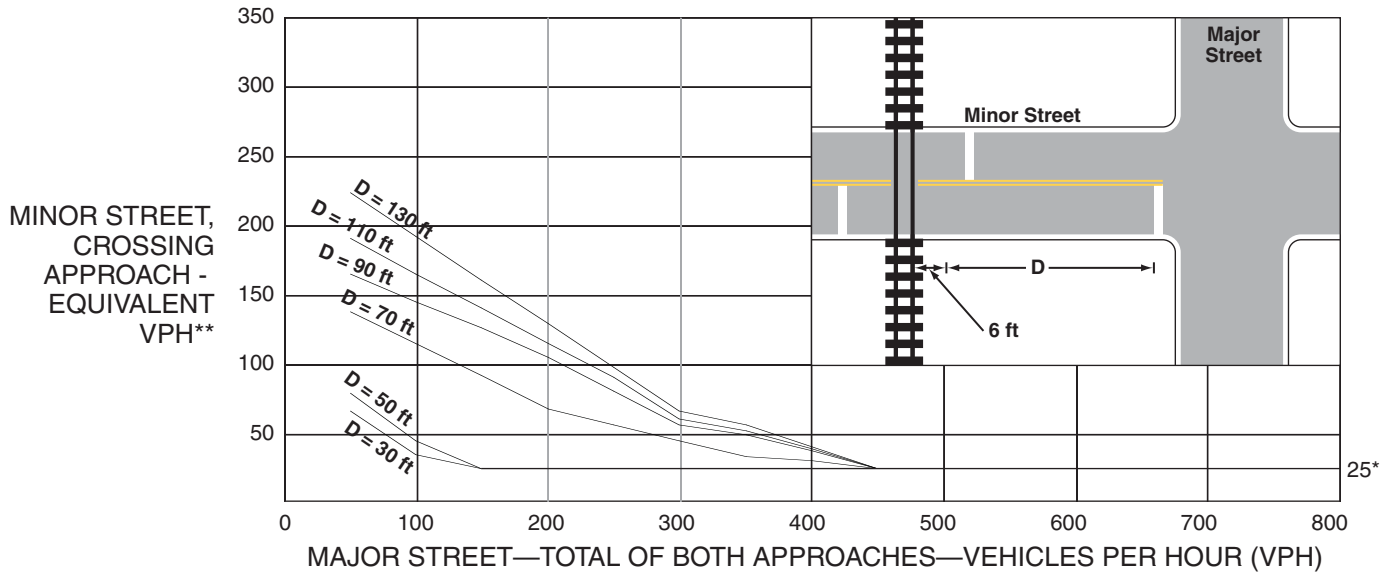
Standard:

- 03 **The need for a traffic control signal shall be considered if an engineering study finds that both of the following criteria are met:**
- A. **A grade crossing exists on an approach controlled by a STOP or YIELD sign and the center of the track nearest to the intersection is within 140 feet of the stop line or yield line on the approach; and**
 - B. **During the highest traffic volume hour during which rail traffic uses the crossing, the plotted point representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding vehicles per hour on the minor-street approach that crosses the track (one direction only, approaching the intersection) falls above the applicable curve in Figure 4C-9 or 4C-10 for the existing combination of approach lanes over the track and the distance D, which is the clear storage distance as defined in Section 1A.13.**

Guidance:

- 04 *The following considerations apply when plotting the traffic volume data on Figure 4C-9 or 4C-10:*
- A. *Figure 4C-9 should be used if there is only one lane approaching the intersection at the track crossing location and Figure 4C-10 should be used if there are two or more lanes approaching the intersection at the track crossing location.*

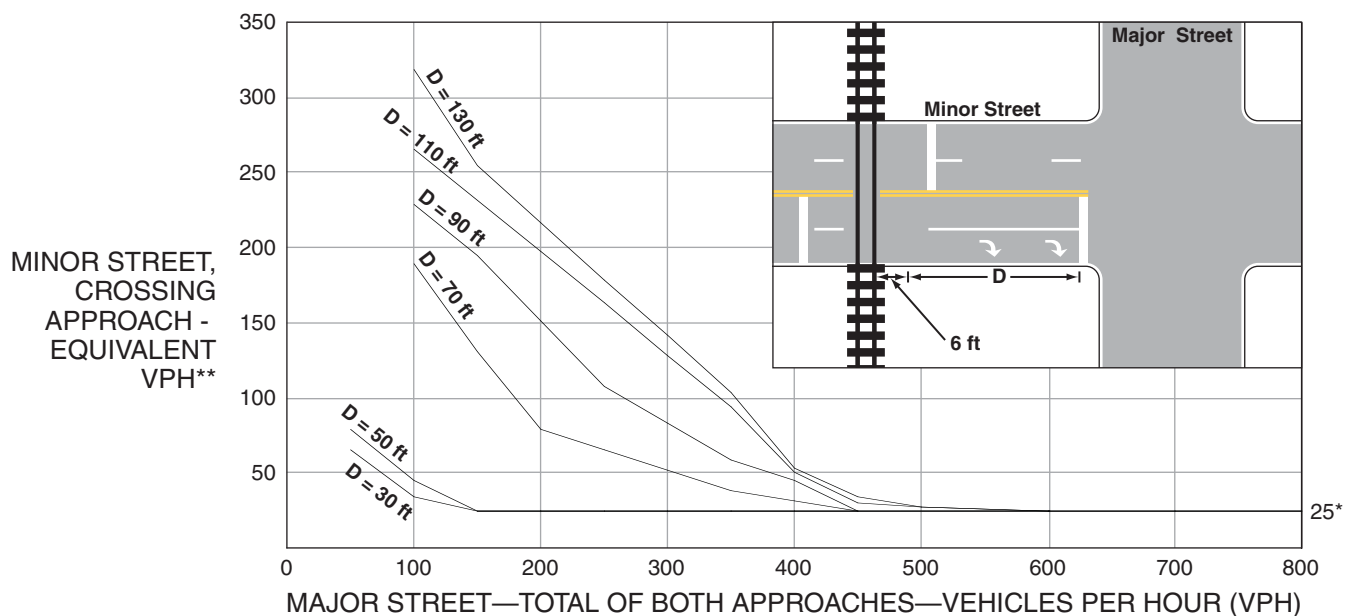
**Figure 4C-9. Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing
(One Approach Lane at the Track Crossing)**



* 25 vph applies as the lower threshold volume

** VPH after applying the adjustment factors in Tables 4C-2, 4C-3, and/or 4C-4, if appropriate

**Figure 4C-10. Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing
(Two or More Approach Lanes at the Track Crossing)**



* 25 vph applies as the lower threshold volume

** VPH after applying the adjustment factors in Tables 4C-2, 4C-3, and/or 4C-4, if appropriate

- B. After determining the actual distance D , the curve for the distance D that is nearest to the actual distance D should be used. For example, if the actual distance D is 95 feet, the plotted point should be compared to the curve for $D = 90$ feet.
- C. If the rail traffic arrival times are unknown, the highest traffic volume hour of the day should be used.

Option:

- 05 The minor-street approach volume may be multiplied by up to three adjustment factors as provided in Paragraphs 6 through 8.
- 06 Because the curves are based on an average of four occurrences of rail traffic per day, the vehicles per hour on the minor-street approach may be multiplied by the adjustment factor shown in Table 4C-2 for the appropriate number of occurrences of rail traffic per day.
- 07 Because the curves are based on typical vehicle occupancy, if at least 2% of the vehicles crossing the track are buses carrying at least 20 people, the vehicles per hour on the minor-street approach may be multiplied by the adjustment factor shown in Table 4C-3 for the appropriate percentage of high-occupancy buses.
- 08 Because the curves are based on tractor-trailer trucks comprising 10% of the vehicles crossing the track, the vehicles per hour on the minor-street approach may be multiplied by the adjustment factor shown in Table 4C-4 for the appropriate distance and percentage of tractor-trailer trucks.

Standard:

- 09 If this warrant is met and a traffic control signal at the intersection is justified by an engineering study, then:
- A. The traffic control signal shall have actuation on the minor street;
 - B. Preemption control shall be provided in accordance with Sections 4D.27, 8C.09, and 8C.10; and
 - C. The grade crossing shall have flashing-light signals (see Chapter 8C).

Guidance:

- 10 If this warrant is met and a traffic control signal at the intersection is justified by an engineering study, the grade crossing should have automatic gates (see Chapter 8C).

Table 4C-2. Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Daily Frequency of Rail Traffic

Rail Traffic per Day	Adjustment Factor
1	0.67
2	0.91
3 to 5	1.00
6 to 8	1.18
9 to 11	1.25
12 or more	1.33

Table 4C-3. Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Percentage of High-Occupancy Buses

% of High-Occupancy Buses* on Minor-Street Approach	Adjustment Factor
0%	1.00
2%	1.09
4%	1.19
6% or more	1.32

* A high-occupancy bus is defined as a bus occupied by at least 20 people.

Table 4C-4. Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Percentage of Tractor-Trailer Trucks

% of Tractor-Trailer Trucks on Minor-Street Approach	Adjustment Factor	
	D less than 70 feet	D of 70 feet or more
0% to 2.5%	0.50	0.50
2.6% to 7.5%	0.75	0.75
7.6% to 12.5%	1.00	1.00
12.6% to 17.5%	2.30	1.15
17.6% to 22.5%	2.70	1.35
22.6% to 27.5%	3.28	1.64
More than 27.5%	4.18	2.09

CHAPTER 4D. TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNAL FEATURES

Section 4D.01 General

Support:

- 01 The features of traffic control signals of interest to road users are the location, design, and meaning of the signal indications. Uniformity in the design features that affect the traffic to be controlled, as set forth in this Manual, is especially important for the safety and efficiency of operations.
- 02 Traffic control signals can be operated in pretimed, semi-actuated, or full-actuated modes. For isolated (non-interconnected) signalized locations on rural high-speed highways, full-actuated mode with advance vehicle detection on the high-speed approaches is typically used. These features are designed to reduce the frequency with which the onset of the yellow change interval is displayed when high-speed approaching vehicles are in the “dilemma zone” such that the drivers of these high-speed vehicles find it difficult to decide whether to stop or proceed.

Standard:

- 03 **When a traffic control signal is not in operation, such as before it is placed in service, during seasonal shutdowns, or when it is not desirable to operate the traffic control signal, the signal faces shall be covered, turned, or taken down to clearly indicate that the traffic control signal is not in operation.**

Support:

- 04 Seasonal shutdown is a condition in which a permanent traffic signal is turned off or otherwise made non-operational during a particular season when its operation is not justified. This might be applied in a community where tourist traffic during most of the year justifies the permanent signalization, but a seasonal shutdown of the signal during an annual period of lower tourist traffic would reduce delays; or where a major traffic generator, such as a large factory, justifies the permanent signalization, but the large factory is shut down for an annual factory vacation for a few weeks in the summer.

Standard:

- 05 **A traffic control signal shall control traffic only at the intersection or midblock location where the signal faces are placed.**
- 06 **Midblock crosswalks shall not be signalized if they are located within 300 feet from the nearest traffic control signal, unless the proposed traffic control signal will not restrict the progressive movement of traffic.**

Guidance:

- 07 *A midblock crosswalk location should not be controlled by a traffic control signal if the crosswalk is located within 100 feet from side streets or driveways that are controlled by STOP signs or YIELD signs.*
- 08 *Engineering judgment should be used to determine the proper phasing and timing for a traffic control signal. Since traffic flows and patterns change, phasing and timing should be reevaluated regularly and updated if needed.*
- 09 *Traffic control signals within 1/2 mile of one another along a major route or in a network of intersecting major routes should be coordinated, preferably with interconnected controller units. Where traffic control signals that are within 1/2 mile of one another along a major route have a jurisdictional boundary or a boundary between different signal systems between them, coordination across the boundary should be considered.*

Support:

- 10 Signal coordination need not be maintained between control sections that operate on different cycle lengths.
- 11 For coordination with grade crossing signals and movable bridge signals, see Sections 4D.27, 4J.03, 8C.09, and 8C.10.

Section 4D.02 Responsibility for Operation and Maintenance

Guidance:

- 01 *Prior to installing any traffic control signal, the responsibility for the maintenance of the signal and all of the appurtenances, hardware, software, and the timing plan(s) should be clearly established. The responsible agency should provide for the maintenance of the traffic control signal and all of its appurtenances in a competent manner.*
- 02 *To this end the agency should:*
 - A. *Keep every controller assembly in effective operation in accordance with its predetermined timing schedule; check the operation of the controller assembly frequently enough to verify that it is operating in accordance with the predetermined timing schedule; and establish a policy to maintain a record of all timing changes and that only authorized persons are permitted to make timing changes;*

- B. *Clean the optical system of the signal sections and replace the light sources as frequently as experience proves necessary;*
- C. *Clean and service equipment and other appurtenances as frequently as experience proves necessary;*
- D. *Provide for alternate operation of the traffic control signal during a period of failure, using flashing mode or manual control, or manual traffic direction by proper authorities as might be required by traffic volumes or congestion, or by erecting other traffic control devices;*
- E. *Have properly skilled maintenance personnel available without undue delay for all signal malfunctions and signal indication failures;*
- F. *Provide spare equipment to minimize the interruption of traffic control signal operation as a result of equipment failure;*
- G. *Provide for the availability of properly skilled maintenance personnel for the repair of all components; and*
- H. *Maintain the appearance of the signal displays and equipment.*

Section 4D.03 Provisions for Pedestrians

Support:

- 01 Chapter 4E contains additional information regarding pedestrian signals and Chapter 4F contains additional information regarding pedestrian hybrid beacons.

Standard:

- 02 **The design and operation of traffic control signals shall take into consideration the needs of pedestrian as well as vehicular traffic .**
- 03 **If engineering judgment indicates the need for provisions for a given pedestrian movement, signal faces conveniently visible to pedestrians shall be provided by pedestrian signal heads (see Chapter 4E) or a vehicular signal face(s) for a concurrent vehicular movement.**

Guidance:

- 04 *Accessible pedestrian signals (see Sections 4E.09 through 4E.13) that provide information in non-visual formats (such as audible tones, speech messages, and/or vibrating surfaces) should be provided where determined appropriate by engineering judgment.*
- 05 *Where pedestrian movements regularly occur, pedestrians should be provided with sufficient time to cross the roadway by adjusting the traffic control signal operation and timing to provide sufficient crossing time every cycle or by providing pedestrian detectors.*
- 06 *If it is necessary or desirable to prohibit certain pedestrian movements at a traffic control signal location, No Pedestrian Crossing (R9-3) signs (see Section 2B.51) should be used if it is not practical to provide a barrier or other physical feature to physically prevent the pedestrian movements.*

Section 4D.04 Meaning of Vehicular Signal Indications

Support:

- 01 The “Uniform Vehicle Code” (see Section 1A.11) is the primary source for the standards for the meaning of vehicular signal indications to both vehicle operators and pedestrians as provided in this Section, and the standards for the meaning of separate pedestrian signal head indications as provided in Section 4E.02.
- 02 The physical area that is defined as being “within the intersection” is dependent upon the conditions that are described in the definition of intersection in Section 1A.13.

Standard:

- 03 **The following meanings shall be given to highway traffic signal indications for vehicles and pedestrians:**
- A. Steady green signal indications shall have the following meanings:**
1. **Vehicular traffic facing a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication is permitted to proceed straight through or turn right or left or make a U-turn movement except as such movement is modified by lane-use signs, turn prohibition signs, lane markings, roadway design, separate turn signal indications, or other traffic control devices.**

Such vehicular traffic, including vehicles turning right or left or making a U-turn movement, shall yield the right-of-way to:

 - (a) **Pedestrians lawfully within an associated crosswalk, and**
 - (b) **Other vehicles lawfully within the intersection.**

In addition, vehicular traffic turning left or making a U-turn movement to the left shall yield the right-of-way to other vehicles approaching from the opposite direction so closely as to constitute an immediate hazard during the time when such turning vehicle is moving across or within the intersection.

2. Vehicular traffic facing a GREEN ARROW signal indication, displayed alone or in combination with another signal indication, is permitted to cautiously enter the intersection only to make the movement indicated by such arrow, or such other movement as is permitted by other signal indications displayed at the same time.

Such vehicular traffic, including vehicles turning right or left or making a U-turn movement, shall yield the right-of-way to:

- (a) Pedestrians lawfully within an associated crosswalk, and
 - (b) Other vehicles lawfully within the intersection.
3. Pedestrians facing a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication, unless otherwise directed by a pedestrian signal indication or other traffic control device, are permitted to proceed across the roadway within any marked or unmarked associated crosswalk. The pedestrian shall yield the right-of-way to vehicles lawfully within the intersection or so close as to create an immediate hazard at the time that the green signal indication is first displayed.
 4. Pedestrians facing a GREEN ARROW signal indication, unless otherwise directed by a pedestrian signal indication or other traffic control device, shall not cross the roadway.
- B. Steady yellow signal indications shall have the following meanings:
1. Vehicular traffic facing a steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is thereby warned that the related green movement or the related flashing arrow movement is being terminated or that a steady red signal indication will be displayed immediately thereafter when vehicular traffic shall not enter the intersection. The rules set forth concerning vehicular operation under the movement(s) being terminated shall continue to apply while the steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is displayed.
 2. Vehicular traffic facing a steady YELLOW ARROW signal indication is thereby warned that the related GREEN ARROW movement or the related flashing arrow movement is being terminated. The rules set forth concerning vehicular operation under the movement(s) being terminated shall continue to apply while the steady YELLOW ARROW signal indication is displayed.
 3. Pedestrians facing a steady CIRCULAR YELLOW or YELLOW ARROW signal indication, unless otherwise directed by a pedestrian signal indication or other traffic control device shall not start to cross the roadway.
- C. Steady red signal indications shall have the following meanings:
1. Vehicular traffic facing a steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication, unless entering the intersection to make another movement permitted by another signal indication, shall stop at a clearly marked stop line; but if there is no stop line, traffic shall stop before entering the crosswalk on the near side of the intersection; or if there is no crosswalk, then before entering the intersection; and shall remain stopped until a signal indication to proceed is displayed, or as provided below.
 Except when a traffic control device is in place prohibiting a turn on red or a steady RED ARROW signal indication is displayed, vehicular traffic facing a steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication is permitted to enter the intersection to turn right, or to turn left from a one-way street into a one-way street, after stopping. The right to proceed with the turn shall be subject to the rules applicable after making a stop at a STOP sign.
 2. Vehicular traffic facing a steady RED ARROW signal indication shall not enter the intersection to make the movement indicated by the arrow and, unless entering the intersection to make another movement permitted by another signal indication, shall stop at a clearly marked stop line; but if there is no stop line, before entering the crosswalk on the near side of the intersection; or if there is no crosswalk, then before entering the intersection; and shall remain stopped until a signal indication or other traffic control device permitting the movement indicated by such RED ARROW is displayed.
 When a traffic control device is in place permitting a turn on a steady RED ARROW signal indication, vehicular traffic facing a steady RED ARROW signal indication is permitted to enter the intersection to make the movement indicated by the arrow signal indication, after stopping. The right to proceed with the turn shall be limited to the direction indicated by the arrow and shall be subject to the rules applicable after making a stop at a STOP sign.
 3. Unless otherwise directed by a pedestrian signal indication or other traffic control device, pedestrians facing a steady CIRCULAR RED or steady RED ARROW signal indication shall not enter the roadway.
- D. A flashing green signal indication has no meaning and shall not be used.

E. Flashing yellow signal indications shall have the following meanings:

1. Vehicular traffic, on an approach to an intersection, facing a flashing **CIRCULAR YELLOW** signal indication is permitted to cautiously enter the intersection to proceed straight through or turn right or left or make a U-turn except as such movement is modified by lane-use signs, turn prohibition signs, lane markings, roadway design, separate turn signal indications, or other traffic control devices.

Such vehicular traffic, including vehicles turning right or left or making a U-turn, shall yield the right-of-way to:

- (a) Pedestrians lawfully within an associated crosswalk, and
- (b) Other vehicles lawfully within the intersection.

In addition, vehicular traffic turning left or making a U-turn to the left shall yield the right-of-way to other vehicles approaching from the opposite direction so closely as to constitute an immediate hazard during the time when such turning vehicle is moving across or within the intersection.

2. Vehicular traffic, on an approach to an intersection, facing a flashing **YELLOW ARROW** signal indication, displayed alone or in combination with another signal indication, is permitted to cautiously enter the intersection only to make the movement indicated by such arrow, or other such movement as is permitted by other signal indications displayed at the same time.

Such vehicular traffic, including vehicles turning right or left or making a U-turn, shall yield the right-of-way to:

- (a) Pedestrians lawfully within an associated crosswalk, and
- (b) Other vehicles lawfully within the intersection.

In addition, vehicular traffic turning left or making a U-turn to the left shall yield the right-of-way to other vehicles approaching from the opposite direction so closely as to constitute an immediate hazard during the time when such turning vehicle is moving across or within the intersection.

3. Pedestrians facing any flashing yellow signal indication at an intersection, unless otherwise directed by a pedestrian signal indication or other traffic control device, are permitted to proceed across the roadway within any marked or unmarked associated crosswalk. Pedestrians shall yield the right-of-way to vehicles lawfully within the intersection at the time that the flashing yellow signal indication is first displayed.
4. When a flashing **CIRCULAR YELLOW** signal indication(s) is displayed as a beacon (see Chapter 4L) to supplement another traffic control device, road users are notified that there is a need to pay extra attention to the message contained thereon or that the regulatory or warning requirements of the other traffic control device, which might not be applicable at all times, are currently applicable.

F. Flashing red signal indications shall have the following meanings:

1. Vehicular traffic, on an approach to an intersection, facing a flashing **CIRCULAR RED** signal indication shall stop at a clearly marked stop line; but if there is no stop line, before entering the crosswalk on the near side of the intersection; or if there is no crosswalk, at the point nearest the intersecting roadway where the driver has a view of approaching traffic in the intersecting roadway before entering the intersection. The right to proceed shall be subject to the rules applicable after making a stop at a **STOP** sign.
2. Vehicular traffic, on an approach to an intersection, facing a flashing **RED ARROW** signal indication if intending to turn in the direction indicated by the arrow shall stop at a clearly marked stop line; but if there is no stop line, before entering the crosswalk on the near side of the intersection; or if there is no crosswalk, at the point nearest the intersecting roadway where the driver has a view of approaching traffic in the intersecting roadway before entering the intersection. The right to proceed with the turn shall be limited to the direction indicated by the arrow and shall be subject to the rules applicable after making a stop at a **STOP** sign.
3. Pedestrians facing any flashing red signal indication at an intersection, unless otherwise directed by a pedestrian signal indication or other traffic control device, are permitted to proceed across the roadway within any marked or unmarked associated crosswalk. Pedestrians shall yield the right-of-way to vehicles lawfully within the intersection at the time that the flashing red signal indication is first displayed.
4. When a flashing **CIRCULAR RED** signal indication(s) is displayed as a beacon (see Chapter 4L) to supplement another traffic control device, road users are notified that there is a need to pay extra attention to the message contained thereon or that the regulatory requirements of the other traffic control device, which might not be applicable at all times, are currently applicable. Use of this signal indication shall be limited to supplementing **STOP (R1-1)**, **DO NOT ENTER (R5-1)**, or **WRONG WAY (R5-1a)** signs, and to applications where compliance with the supplemented traffic control device requires a stop at a designated point.

Section 4D.05 Application of Steady Signal Indications

Standard:

- 01 When a traffic control signal is being operated in a steady (stop-and-go) mode, at least one indication in each signal face shall be displayed at any given time.
- 02 A signal face(s) that controls a particular vehicular movement during any interval of a cycle shall control that same movement during all intervals of the cycle.
- 03 Steady signal indications shall be applied as follows:
- A. A steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication:
 - 1. Shall be displayed when it is intended to prohibit traffic, except pedestrians directed by a pedestrian signal head, from entering the intersection or other controlled area. Turning after stopping is permitted as stated in Item C.1 in Paragraph 3 of Section 4D.04.
 - 2. Shall be displayed with the appropriate GREEN ARROW signal indications when it is intended to permit traffic to make a specified turn or turns, and to prohibit traffic from proceeding straight ahead through the intersection or other controlled area, except in protected only mode operation (see Sections 4D.19 and 4D.23), or in protected/permissive mode operation with separate turn signal faces (see Sections 4D.20 and 4D.24).
 - B. A steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication:
 - 1. Shall be displayed following a CIRCULAR GREEN or straight-through GREEN ARROW signal indication in the same signal face.
 - 2. Shall not be displayed in conjunction with the change from the CIRCULAR RED signal indication to the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication.
 - 3. Shall be followed by a CIRCULAR RED signal indication except that, when entering preemption operation, the return to the previous CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall be permitted following a steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication (see Section 4D.27).
 - 4. Shall not be displayed to an approach from which drivers are turning left permissively or making a U-turn to the left permissively unless one of the following conditions exists:
 - (a) A steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is also simultaneously being displayed to the opposing approach;
 - (b) An engineering study has determined that, because of unique intersection conditions, the condition described in Item (a) cannot reasonably be implemented without causing significant operational or safety problems and that the volume of impacted left-turning or U-turning traffic is relatively low, and those left-turning or U-turning drivers are advised that a steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is not simultaneously being displayed to the opposing traffic if this operation occurs continuously by the installation near the left-most signal head of a W25-1 sign (see Section 2C.48) with the legend ONCOMING TRAFFIC HAS EXTENDED GREEN; or
 - (c) Drivers are advised of the operation if it occurs only occasionally, such as during a preemption sequence, by the installation near the left-most signal head of a W25-2 sign (see Section 2C.48) with the legend ONCOMING TRAFFIC MAY HAVE EXTENDED GREEN.
 - C. A steady CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall be displayed only when it is intended to permit traffic to proceed in any direction that is lawful and practical.
 - D. A steady RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed when it is intended to prohibit traffic, except pedestrians directed by a pedestrian signal head, from entering the intersection or other controlled area to make the indicated turn. Except as described in Item C.2 in Paragraph 3 of Section 4D.04, turning on a steady RED ARROW signal indication shall not be permitted.
 - E. A steady YELLOW ARROW signal indication:
 - 1. Shall be displayed in the same direction as a GREEN ARROW signal indication following a GREEN ARROW signal indication in the same signal face, unless:
 - (a) The GREEN ARROW signal indication and a CIRCULAR GREEN (or straight-through GREEN ARROW) signal indication terminate simultaneously in the same signal face, or
 - (b) The green arrow is a straight-through GREEN ARROW (see Item B.1).
 - 2. Shall be displayed in the same direction as a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication or flashing RED ARROW signal indication following a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication or flashing RED ARROW signal indication in the same signal face, when the flashing arrow indication is displayed as part of a steady mode operation, if the signal face will subsequently display a steady red signal indication.

3. Shall not be displayed in conjunction with the change from a steady RED ARROW, flashing RED ARROW, or flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication to a GREEN ARROW signal indication, except when entering preemption operation as provided in Item 5(a).
4. Shall not be displayed when any conflicting vehicular movement has a green or yellow signal indication (except for the situation regarding U-turns to the left provided in Paragraph 4) or any conflicting pedestrian movement has a WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) or flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication, except that a steady left-turn (or U-turn to the left) YELLOW ARROW signal indication used to terminate a flashing left-turn (or U-turn to the left) YELLOW ARROW or a flashing left-turn (or U-turn to the left) RED ARROW signal indication in a signal face controlling a permissive left-turn (or U-turn to the left) movement as described in Sections 4D.18 and 4D.20 shall be permitted to be displayed when a CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is displayed for the opposing through movement. Vehicles departing in the same direction shall not be considered in conflict if, for each turn lane with moving traffic, there is a separate departing lane, and pavement markings or raised channelization clearly indicate which departure lane to use.
5. Shall not be displayed to terminate a flashing arrow signal indication on an approach from which drivers are turning left permissively or making a U-turn to the left permissively unless one of the following conditions exists:
 - (a) A steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is also simultaneously being displayed to the opposing approach;
 - (b) An engineering study has determined that, because of unique intersection conditions, the condition described in Item (a) cannot reasonably be implemented without causing significant operational or safety problems and that the volume of impacted left-turning or U-turning traffic is relatively low, and those left-turning or U-turning drivers are advised that a steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is not simultaneously being displayed to the opposing traffic if this operation occurs continuously by the installation near the left-most signal head of a W25-1 sign (see Section 2C.48) with the legend ONCOMING TRAFFIC HAS EXTENDED GREEN; or
 - (c) Drivers are advised of the operation if it occurs only occasionally, such as during a preemption sequence, by the installation near the left-most signal head of a W25-2 sign (see Section 2C.48) with the legend ONCOMING TRAFFIC MAY HAVE EXTENDED GREEN.
6. Shall be terminated by a RED ARROW signal indication for the same direction or a CIRCULAR RED signal indication except:
 - (a) When entering preemption operation, the display of a GREEN ARROW signal indication or a flashing arrow signal indication shall be permitted following a steady YELLOW ARROW signal indication.
 - (b) When the movement controlled by the arrow is to continue on a permissive mode basis during an immediately following CIRCULAR GREEN or flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication.

F. A steady GREEN ARROW signal indication:

1. Shall be displayed only to allow vehicular movements, in the direction indicated, that are not in conflict with other vehicles moving on a green or yellow signal indication and are not in conflict with pedestrians crossing in compliance with a WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) or flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication. Vehicles departing in the same direction shall not be considered in conflict if, for each turn lane with moving traffic, there is a separate departing lane, and pavement markings or raised channelization clearly indicate which departure lane to use.
2. Shall be displayed on a signal face that controls a left-turn movement when said movement is not in conflict with other vehicles moving on a green or yellow signal indication (except for the situation regarding U-turns provided in Paragraph 4) and is not in conflict with pedestrians crossing in compliance with a WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) or flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication. Vehicles departing in the same direction shall not be considered in conflict if, for each turn lane with moving traffic, there is a separate departing lane, and pavement markings or raised channelization clearly indicate which departure lane to use.
3. Shall not be required on the stem of a T-intersection or for turns from a one-way street.

Option:

- 04 If U-turns are permitted from the approach and a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication is simultaneously being displayed to road users making a right turn from the conflicting approach to the left, road users making a U-turn may be advised of the operation by the installation near the left-turn signal face of a U-TURN YIELD TO RIGHT TURN (R10-16) sign (see Section 2B.53).
- 05 If not otherwise prohibited, a steady straight-through green arrow signal indication may be used instead of a circular green signal indication in a signal face on an approach intersecting a one-way street to discourage wrong-way turns.
- 06 If not otherwise prohibited, steady red, yellow, and green turn arrow signal indications may be used instead of steady circular red, yellow, and green signal indications in a signal face on an approach where all traffic is required to turn or where the straight-through movement is not physically possible.

Support:

- 07 Section 4D.25 contains information regarding the signalization of approaches that have a shared left-turn/right-turn lane and no through movement.

Standard:

- 08 **If supplemental signal faces are used, the following limitations shall apply:**
 - A. Left-turn arrows and U-turn arrows to the left shall not be used in near-right signal faces.
 - B. Right-turn arrows and U-turn arrows to the right shall not be used in far-left signal faces. A far-side median-mounted signal face shall be considered a far-left signal for this application.
- 09 **A straight-through RED ARROW signal indication or a straight-through YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed on any signal face, either alone or in combination with any other signal indication.**
- 10 **The following combinations of signal indications shall not be simultaneously displayed on any one signal face:**
 - A. CIRCULAR RED with CIRCULAR YELLOW;
 - B. CIRCULAR GREEN with CIRCULAR RED; or
 - C. Straight-through GREEN ARROW with CIRCULAR RED;
- 11 **Additionally, the above combinations shall not be simultaneously displayed on an approach as a result of the combination of displays from multiple signal faces unless the display is created by a signal face(s) devoted exclusively to the control of a right-turning movement and:**
 - A. The signal face(s) controlling the right-turning movement is visibility-limited from the adjacent through movement or positioned to minimize potential confusion to approaching road users, or
 - B. A RIGHT TURN SIGNAL (R10-10) sign (see Sections 4D.21 through 4D.24) is mounted adjacent to the signal face(s) controlling the right-turning movement.
- 12 **The following combinations of signal indications shall not be simultaneously displayed on any one signal face or as a result of the combination of displays from multiple signal faces on an approach:**
 - A. CIRCULAR GREEN with CIRCULAR YELLOW;
 - B. Straight-through GREEN ARROW with CIRCULAR YELLOW;
 - C. GREEN ARROW with YELLOW ARROW pointing in the same direction;
 - D. RED ARROW with YELLOW ARROW pointing in the same direction; or
 - E. GREEN ARROW with RED ARROW pointing in the same direction.
- 13 **Except as otherwise provided in Sections 4F.03 and 4G.04, the same signal section shall not be used to display both a flashing yellow and a steady yellow indication during steady mode operation. Except as otherwise provided in Sections 4D.18, 4D.20, 4D.22, and 4D.24, the same signal section shall not be used to display both a flashing red and a steady red indication during steady mode operation.**

Guidance:

- 14 *No movement that creates an unexpected crossing of pathways of moving vehicles or pedestrians should be allowed during any green or yellow interval, except when all three of the following conditions are met:*
 - A. *The movement involves only slight conflict, and*
 - B. *Serious traffic delays are substantially reduced by permitting the conflicting movement, and*
 - C. *Drivers and pedestrians subjected to the unexpected conflict are effectively warned thereof by a sign.*

Section 4D.06 Signal Indications – Design, Illumination, Color, and Shape

Standard:

- 01 Each signal indication, except those used for pedestrian signal heads and lane-use control signals, shall be circular or arrow.
- 02 Letters or numbers (including those associated with countdown displays) shall not be displayed as part of a vehicular signal indication.
- 03 Strobes shall not be used within or adjacent to any signal indication.
- 04 Except for the flashing signal indications and the pre-emption confirmation lights that are expressly allowed by the provisions of this Chapter, flashing displays shall not be used within or adjacent to any signal indications.
- 05 Each circular signal indication shall emit a single color: red, yellow, or green.
- 06 Each arrow signal indication shall emit a single color: red, yellow, or green except that the alternate display (dual-arrow signal section) of a GREEN ARROW and a YELLOW ARROW signal indication, both pointing in the same direction, shall be permitted, provided that they are not displayed simultaneously.
- 07 The arrow, which shall show only one direction, shall be the only illuminated part of an arrow signal indication.
- 08 Arrows shall be pointed:
- A. Vertically upward to indicate a straight-through movement, or
 - B. Horizontally in the direction of the turn to indicate a turn at approximately or greater than a right angle, or
 - C. Upward with a slope at an angle approximately equal to that of the turn if the angle of the turn is substantially less than a right angle, or
 - D. In a manner that directs the driver through the turn if a U-turn arrow is used (see Figure 4D-1).
- 09 Except as provided in Paragraph 10, the requirements of the publication entitled “Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads” (see Section 1A.11) that pertain to the aspects of the signal head design that affect the display of the signal indications shall be met.

Guidance:

- 10 The intensity and distribution of light from each illuminated signal lens should comply with the publications entitled “Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads” and “Traffic Signal Lamps” (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

- 11 References to signal lenses in this section shall not be used to limit signal optical units to incandescent lamps within optical assemblies that include lenses.
- Support:
- 12 Research has resulted in signal optical units that are not lenses, such as, but not limited to, light emitting diode (LED) traffic signal modules. Some units are practical for all signal indications, and some are practical for specific types such as visibility-limited signal indications.

Guidance:

- 13 If a signal indication is so bright that it causes excessive glare during nighttime conditions, some form of automatic dimming should be used to reduce the brilliance of the signal indication.

Figure 4D-1. Example of U-Turn Signal Face



Section 4D.07 Size of Vehicular Signal Indications

Standard:

- 01 There shall be two nominal diameter sizes for vehicular signal indications: 8 inches and 12 inches.
- 02 Except as provided in Paragraph 3 below, 12-inch signal indications shall be used for all signal sections in all new signal faces.

Option:

- 03 Eight-inch circular signal indications may be used in new signal faces only for:
- A. The green or flashing yellow signal indications in an emergency-vehicle traffic control signal (see Section 4G.02);
 - B. The circular indications in signal faces controlling the approach to the downstream location where two adjacent signalized locations are close to each other and it is not practical because of factors such as high approach speeds, horizontal or vertical curves, or other geometric factors to install visibility-limited signal faces for the downstream approach;

- C. The circular indications in a signal face that is located less than 120 feet from the stop line on a roadway with a posted or statutory speed limit of 30 mph or less;
 - D. The circular indications in a supplemental near-side signal face;
 - E. The circular indications in a supplemental signal face installed for the sole purpose of controlling pedestrian movements (see Section 4D.03) rather than vehicular movements; and
 - F. The circular indications in a signal face installed for the sole purpose of controlling a bikeway or a bicycle movement.
- 04 Existing 8-inch circular signal indications that are not included in Items A through F in Paragraph 3 may be retained for the remainder of their useful service life.

Section 4D.08 Positions of Signal Indications Within a Signal Face – General

Support:

- 01 Standardization of the number and arrangements of signal sections in vehicular traffic control signal faces enables road users who are color vision deficient to identify the illuminated color by its position relative to other signal sections.

Standard:

- 02 **Unless otherwise provided in this Manual for a particular application, each signal face at a signalized location shall have three, four, or five signal sections. Unless otherwise provided in this Manual for a particular application, if a vertical signal face includes a cluster (see Section 4D.09), the signal face shall have at least three vertical positions.**
- 03 **A single-section signal face shall be permitted at a traffic control signal if it consists of a continuously-displayed GREEN ARROW signal indication that is being used to indicate a continuous movement.**
- 04 **The signal sections in a signal face shall be arranged in a vertical or horizontal straight line, except as otherwise provided in Section 4D.09.**
- 05 **The arrangement of adjacent signal sections in a signal face shall follow the relative positions listed in Sections 4D.09 or 4D.10, as applicable.**
- 06 **If a signal section that displays a CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication is used, it shall be located between the signal section that displays the red signal indication and all other signal sections.**
- 07 **If a U-turn arrow signal section is used in a signal face for a U-turn to the left, its position in the signal face shall be the same as stated in Sections 4D.09 and 4D.10 for a left-turn arrow signal section of the same color. If a U-turn arrow signal section is used in a signal face for a U-turn to the right, its position in the signal face shall be the same as stated in Sections 4D.09 and 4D.10 for a right-turn arrow signal section of the same color.**
- 08 **A U-turn arrow signal indication pointing to the left shall not be used in a signal face that also contains a left-turn arrow signal indication. A U-turn arrow signal indication pointing to the right shall not be used in a signal face that also contains a right-turn arrow signal indication.**

Option:

- 09 Within a signal face, two identical CIRCULAR RED or RED ARROW signal indications may be displayed immediately horizontally adjacent to each other in a vertical or horizontal signal face (see Figure 4D-2) for emphasis.
- 10 Horizontally-arranged and vertically-arranged signal faces may be used on the same approach provided they are separated to meet the lateral separation spacing required in Section 4D.13.

Support:

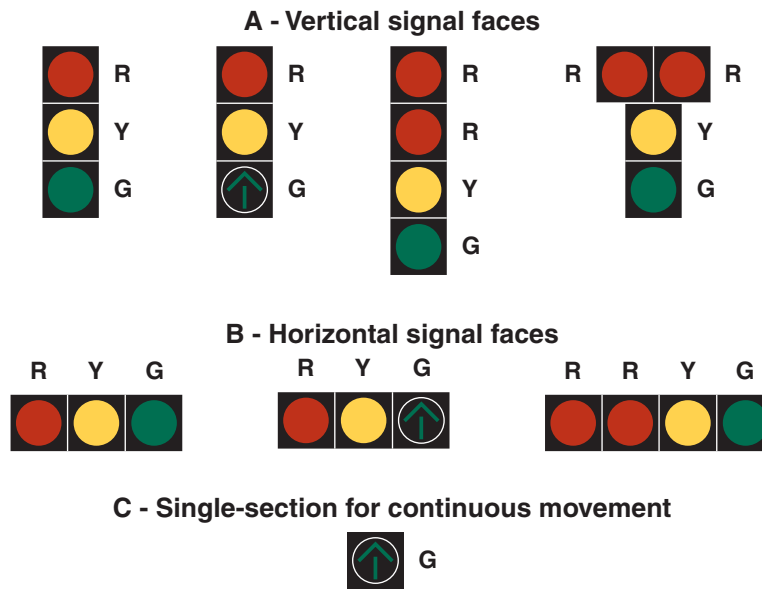
- 11 Figure 4D-2 illustrates some of the typical arrangements of signal sections in signal faces that do not control separate turning movements. Figures 4D-6 through 4D-12 illustrate the typical arrangements of signal sections in left-turn signal faces. Figures 4D-13 through 4D-19 illustrate the typical arrangements of signal sections in right-turn signal faces.

Section 4D.09 Positions of Signal Indications Within a Vertical Signal Face

Standard:

- 01 **In each vertically-arranged signal face, all signal sections that display red signal indications shall be located above all signal sections that display yellow and green signal indications.**
- 02 **In vertically-arranged signal faces, each signal section that displays a YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be located above the signal section that displays the GREEN ARROW signal indication to which it applies.**

Figure 4D-2. Typical Arrangements of Signal Sections in Signal Faces That Do Not Control Turning Movements



- 03 The relative positions of signal sections in a vertically-arranged signal face, from top to bottom, shall be as follows:

CIRCULAR RED

Steady and/or flashing left-turn RED ARROW

Steady and/or flashing right-turn RED ARROW

CIRCULAR YELLOW

CIRCULAR GREEN

Straight-through GREEN ARROW

Steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW

Flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW

Left-turn GREEN ARROW

Steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW

Flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW

Right-turn GREEN ARROW

- 04 If a dual-arrow signal section (capable of alternating between the display of a GREEN ARROW and a YELLOW ARROW signal indication) is used in a vertically-arranged signal face, the dual-arrow signal section shall occupy the same position relative to the other sections as the signal section that displays the GREEN ARROW signal indication in a vertically-arranged signal face would occupy.

Option:

- 05 In a vertically-arranged signal face, signal sections that display signal indications of the same color may be arranged horizontally adjacent to each other at right angles to the basic straight line arrangement to form a clustered signal face (see Figures 4D-2, 4D-9, 4D-11, 4D-16, and 4D-18).

Standard:

- 06 Such clusters shall be limited to the following:
- A. Two identical signal sections,
 - B. Two or three different signal sections that display signal indications of the same color, or
 - C. For only the specific use described in Section 4D.25 (see Drawing B of Figure 4D-20), two signal sections, one of which displays a GREEN ARROW signal indication and the other of which displays a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication.
- 07 The signal section that displays a flashing yellow signal indication during steady mode operation:
- A. Shall not be placed in the same vertical position as the signal section that displays a steady yellow signal indication, and
 - B. Shall be placed below the signal section that displays a steady yellow signal indication.

Support:

- 08 Sections 4F.02 and 4G.04 contain exceptions to the provisions of this Section that are applicable to hybrid beacons.

Section 4D.10 Positions of Signal Indications Within a Horizontal Signal Face

Standard:

- 01 In each horizontally-arranged signal face, all signal sections that display red signal indications shall be located to the left of all signal sections that display yellow and green signal indications.
- 02 In horizontally-arranged signal faces, each signal section that displays a YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be located to the left of the signal section that displays the GREEN ARROW signal indication to which it applies.
- 03 The relative positions of signal sections in a horizontally-arranged signal face, from left to right, shall be as follows:
- CIRCULAR RED
 - Steady and/or flashing left-turn RED ARROW
 - Steady and/or flashing right-turn RED ARROW
 - CIRCULAR YELLOW
 - Steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW
 - Flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW
 - Left-turn GREEN ARROW
 - CIRCULAR GREEN
 - Straight-through GREEN ARROW
 - Steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW
 - Flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW
 - Right-turn GREEN ARROW
- 04 If a dual-arrow signal section (capable of alternating between the display of a GREEN ARROW and a YELLOW ARROW signal indication) is used in a horizontally-arranged signal face, the signal section that displays the dual left-turn arrow signal indication shall be located immediately to the right of the signal section that displays the CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication, the signal section that displays the straight-through GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be located immediately to the right of the signal section that displays the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication, and the signal section that displays the dual right-turn arrow signal indication shall be located to the right of all other signal sections.
- 05 The signal section that displays a flashing yellow signal indication during steady mode operation:
- A. Shall not be placed in the same horizontal position as the signal section that displays a steady yellow signal indication, and
 - B. Shall be placed to the right of the signal section that displays a steady yellow signal indication.

Section 4D.11 Number of Signal Faces on an Approach

Standard:

- 01 The signal faces for each approach to an intersection or a midblock location shall be provided as follows:
- A. If a signalized through movement exists on an approach, a minimum of two primary signal faces shall be provided for the through movement. If a signalized through movement does not exist on an approach, a minimum of two primary signal faces shall be provided for the signalized turning movement that is considered to be the major movement from the approach (also see Section 4D.25).
 - B. See Sections 4D.17 through 4D.20 for left-turn (and U-turn to the left) signal faces.
 - C. See Sections 4D.21 through 4D.24 for right-turn (and U-turn to the right) signal faces.

Option:

- 02 Where a movement (or a certain lane or lanes) at the intersection never conflicts with any other signalized vehicular or pedestrian movement, a continuously-displayed single-section GREEN ARROW signal indication may be used to inform road users that the movement is free-flow and does not need to stop.

Support:

- 03 In some circumstances where the through movement never conflicts with any other signalized vehicular or pedestrian movement at the intersection, such as at T-intersections with appropriate geometrics and/or pavement markings and signing, an engineering study might determine that the through movement (or certain lanes of the through movement) can be free-flow and not signalized.

Guidance:

- 04 *If two or more left-turn lanes are provided for a separately controlled protected only mode left-turn movement, or if a left-turn movement represents the major movement from an approach, two or more primary left-turn signal faces should be provided.*
- 05 *If two or more right-turn lanes are provided for a separately controlled right-turn movement, or if a right-turn movement represents the major movement from an approach, two or more primary right-turn signal faces should be provided.*

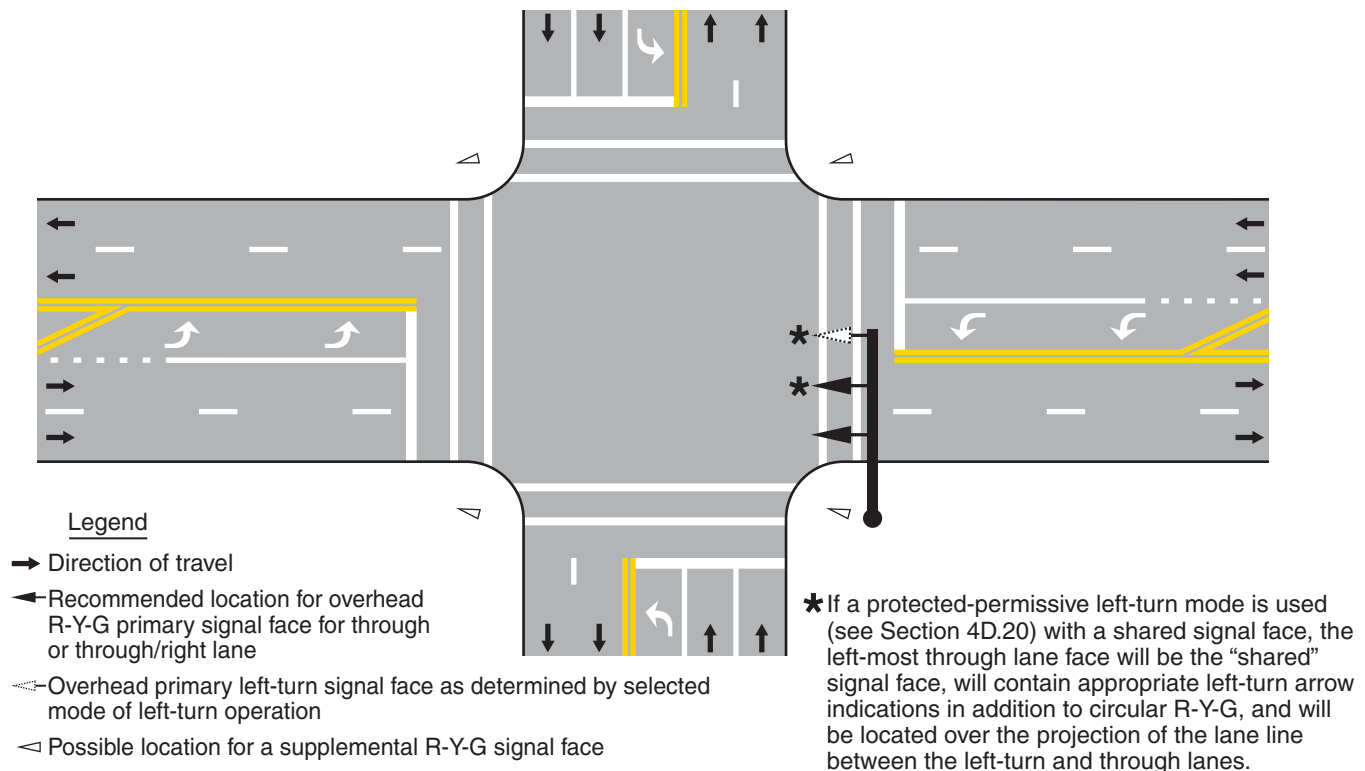
Support:

- 06 Locating primary signal faces overhead on the far side of the intersection has been shown to provide safer operation by reducing intersection entries late in the yellow interval and by reducing red signal violations, as compared to post-mounting signal faces at the roadside or locating signal faces overhead within the intersection on a diagonally-oriented mast arm or span wire. On approaches with two or more lanes for the through movement, one signal face per through lane, centered over each through lane, has also been shown to provide safer operation.

Guidance:

- 07 *If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on an approach to a signalized location is 45 mph or higher, signal faces should be provided as follows for all new or reconstructed signal installations (see Figure 4D-3):*
- A. *The minimum number and location of primary (non-supplemental) signal faces for through traffic should be provided in accordance with Table 4D-1.*

Figure 4D-3. Recommended Vehicular Signal Faces for Approaches with Posted, Statutory, or 85th-Percentile Speed of 45 mph or Higher

**Notes:**

1. Signal faces for only one direction and only one possible set of geometrics (number of lanes, etc.) are illustrated. If there are fewer or more than two through lanes on the approach, see Table 4D-2.
2. Any primary left-turn and/or right-turn signal faces, as determined by Sections 4D.17 through 4D.24, should be overhead for each exclusive turn lane.
3. One or more pole-mounted or overhead supplemental faces should be considered, based on the geometrics of the approach, to maximize visibility for approaching traffic.
4. All signal faces should have backplates.

Table 4D-1. Recommended Minimum Number of Primary Signal Faces for Through Traffic on Approaches with Posted, Statutory, or 85th-Percentile Speed of 45 mph or Higher

Number of Through Lanes on Approach	Total Number of Primary Through Signal Faces for Approach*	Minimum Number of Overhead-Mounted Primary Through Signal Faces for Approach
1	2	1
2	2	1
3	3	2**
4 or more	4 or more	3**

NOTES: * A minimum of two through signal faces is always required (See Section 4D.11). These recommended numbers of through signal faces may be exceeded. Also, see cone of vision requirements otherwise indicated in Section 4D.13.

** If practical, all of the recommended number of primary through signal faces should be located overhead.

- B. If the number of overhead primary signal faces for through traffic is equal to the number of through lanes on an approach, one overhead signal face should be located approximately over the center of each through lane.
- C. Except for shared left-turn and right-turn signal faces, any primary signal face required by Sections 4D.17 through 4D.25 for an exclusive turn lane should be located overhead approximately over the center of each exclusive turn lane.
- D. All primary signal faces should be located on the far side of the intersection.
- E. In addition to the primary signal faces, one or more supplemental pole-mounted or overhead signal faces should be considered to provide added visibility for approaching traffic that is traveling behind large vehicles.
- F. All signal faces should have backplates.

08 This layout of signal faces should also be considered for any major urban or suburban arterial street with four or more lanes and for other approaches with speeds of less than 45 mph.

Section 4D.12 Visibility, Aiming, and Shielding of Signal Faces

Standard:

- 01 The primary consideration in signal face placement, aiming, and adjustment shall be to optimize the visibility of signal indications to approaching traffic.
- 02 Road users approaching a signalized intersection or other signalized area, such as a midblock crosswalk, shall be given a clear and unmistakable indication of their right-of-way assignment.
- 03 The geometry of each intersection to be signalized, including vertical grades, horizontal curves, and obstructions as well as the lateral and vertical angles of sight toward a signal face, as determined by typical driver-eye position, shall be considered in determining the vertical, longitudinal, and lateral position of the signal face.

Guidance:

- 04 The two primary signal faces required as a minimum for each approach should be continuously visible to traffic approaching the traffic control signal, from a point at least the minimum sight distance provided in Table 4D-2 in advance of and measured to the stop line. This range of continuous visibility should be provided unless precluded by a physical obstruction or unless another signalized location is within this range.

Table 4D-2. Minimum Sight Distance for Signal Visibility

85th-Percentile Speed	Minimum Sight Distance
20 mph	175 feet
25 mph	215 feet
30 mph	270 feet
35 mph	325 feet
40 mph	390 feet
45 mph	460 feet
50 mph	540 feet
55 mph	625 feet
60 mph	715 feet

Note: Distances in this table are derived from stopping sight distance plus an assumed queue length for shorter cycle lengths (60 to 75 seconds).

05 *There should be legal authority to prohibit the display of any unauthorized sign, signal, marking, or device that interferes with the effectiveness of any official traffic control device (see Section 11-205 of the “Uniform Vehicle Code”).*

06 *At signalized midblock crosswalks, at least one of the signal faces should be over the traveled way for each approach.*

Standard:

07 **If approaching traffic does not have a continuous view of at least two signal faces for at least the minimum sight distance shown in Table 4D-2, a sign (see Section 2C.36) shall be installed to warn approaching traffic of the traffic control signal.**

Option:

08 *If a sign is installed to warn approaching road users of the traffic control signal, the sign may be supplemented by a Warning Beacon (see Section 4L.03).*

09 *A Warning Beacon used in this manner may be interconnected with the traffic signal controller assembly in such a manner as to flash yellow during the period when road users passing this beacon at the legal speed for the roadway might encounter a red signal indication (or a queue resulting from the display of the red signal indication) upon arrival at the signalized location.*

10 *If the sight distance to the signal faces for an approach is limited by horizontal or vertical alignment, supplemental signal faces aimed at a point on the approach at which the signal indications first become visible may be used.*

Guidance:

11 *Supplemental signal faces should be used if engineering judgment has shown that they are needed to achieve intersection visibility both in advance and immediately before the signalized location.*

12 *If supplemental signal faces are used, they should be located to provide optimum visibility for the movement to be controlled.*

Standard:

13 **In cases where irregular street design necessitates placing signal faces for different street approaches with a comparatively small angle between their respective signal indications, each signal indication shall, to the extent practical, be visibility-limited by signal visors, signal louvers, or other means so that an approaching road user’s view of the signal indication(s) controlling movements on other approaches is minimized.**

14 **Signal visors exceeding 12 inches in length shall not be used on free-swinging signal faces.**

Guidance:

15 *Signal visors should be used on signal faces to aid in directing the signal indication specifically to approaching traffic, as well as to reduce “sun phantom,” which can result when external light enters the lens.*

16 *The use of signal visors, or the use of signal faces or devices that direct the light without a reduction in intensity, should be considered as an alternative to signal louvers because of the reduction in light output caused by signal louvers.*

Option:

17 *Special signal faces, such as visibility-limited signal faces, may be used such that the road user does not see signal indications intended for other approaches before seeing the signal indications for their own approach, if simultaneous viewing of both signal indications could cause the road user to be misdirected.*

Guidance:

18 *If the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed on an approach to a signalized location is 45 mph or higher, signal backplates should be used on all of the signal faces that face the approach. Signal backplates should also be considered for use on signal faces on approaches with posted or statutory speed limits or 85th-percentile speeds of less than 45 mph where sun glare, bright sky, and/or complex or confusing backgrounds indicate a need for enhanced signal face target value.*

Support:

19 *The use of backplates enhances the contrast between the traffic signal indications and their surroundings for both day and night conditions, which is also helpful to older drivers.*

Standard:

20 **The inside of signal visors (hoods), the entire surface of louvers and fins, and the front surface of backplates shall have a dull black finish to minimize light reflection and to increase contrast between the signal indication and its background.**

Option:

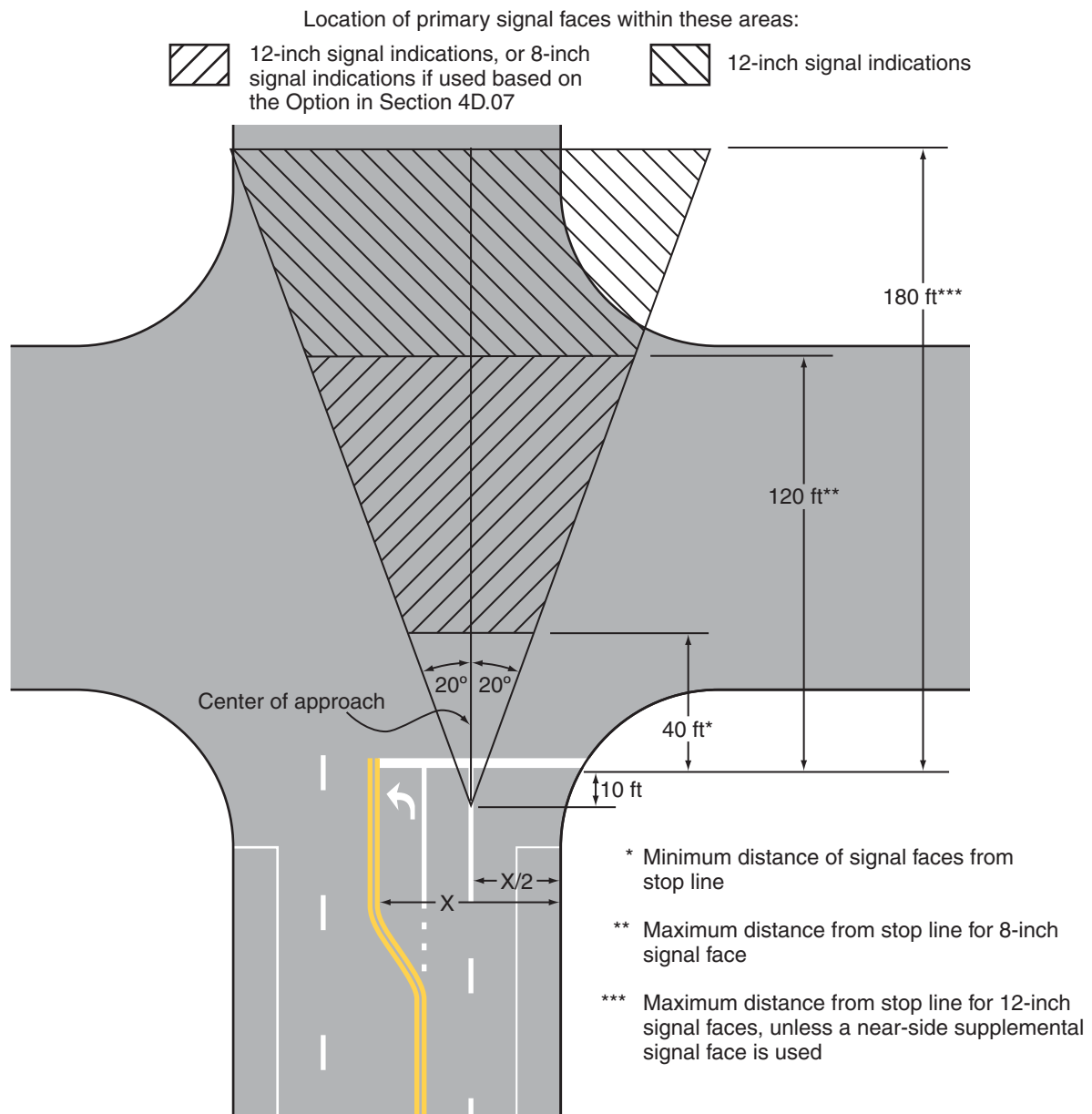
- 21 A yellow retroreflective strip with a minimum width of 1 inch and a maximum width of 3 inches may be placed along the perimeter of the face of a signal backplate to project a rectangular appearance at night.

Section 4D.13 Lateral Positioning of Signal Faces

Standard:

- 01 At least one and preferably both of the minimum of two primary signal faces required for the through movement (or the major turning movement if there is no through movement) on the approach shall be located between two lines intersecting with the center of the approach at a point 10 feet behind the stop line, one making an angle of approximately 20 degrees to the right of the center of the approach extended, and the other making an angle of approximately 20 degrees to the left of the center of the approach extended. The signal face that satisfies this requirement shall simultaneously satisfy the longitudinal placement requirement described in Section 4D.14 (see Figure 4D-4).

Figure 4D-4. Lateral and Longitudinal Location of Primary Signal Faces



Notes:

1. See Section 4D.11 for approaches with posted, statutory, or 85th-percentile speeds of 45 mph or higher
2. See Section 4D.13 regarding location of signal faces that display a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication for a permissive left-turn movement on approaches with an exclusive left-turn lane or lanes

02 **If both of the minimum of two primary signal faces required for the through movement (or the major turning movement if there is no through movement) on the approach are post-mounted, they shall both be on the far side of the intersection, one on the right and one on the left of the approach lane(s).**

03 **The required signal faces for through traffic on an approach shall be located not less than 8 feet apart measured horizontally perpendicular to the approach between the centers of the signal faces.**

04 **If more than one separate turn signal face is provided for a turning movement and if one or both of the separate turn signal faces are located over the roadway, the signal faces shall be located not less than 8 feet apart measured horizontally perpendicular to the approach between the centers of the signal faces.**

Guidance:

05 *If a signal face controls a specific lane or lanes of an approach, its position should make it readily visible to road users making that movement.*

Support:

06 Section 4D.11 contains additional provisions regarding lateral positioning of signal faces for approaches having a posted or statutory speed limit or an 85th-percentile speed of 45 mph or higher.

Standard:

07 **If an exclusive left-turn, right-turn, or U-turn lane is present on an approach and if a primary separate turn signal face controlling that lane is mounted over the roadway, the primary separate turn signal face shall not be positioned any further to the right than the extension of the right-hand edge of the exclusive turn lane or any further to the left than the extension of the left-hand edge of the exclusive turn lane.**

08 **Supplemental turn signal faces mounted over the roadway shall not be subject to the positioning requirements in the previous paragraph.**

Guidance:

09 *For new or reconstructed signal installations, on an approach with an exclusive turn lane(s) for a left-turn (or U-turn to the left) movement and with opposing vehicular traffic, signal faces that display a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication should not be post-mounted on the far-side median or mounted overhead above the exclusive turn lane(s) or the extension of the lane(s).*

Standard:

10 **If supplemental post-mounted signal faces are used, the following limitations shall apply:**

- A. Left-turn arrows and U-turn arrows to the left shall not be used in near-right signal faces.
- B. Right-turn arrows and U-turn arrows to the right shall not be used in far-left signal faces. A far-side median-mounted signal face shall be considered a far-left signal for this application.

Section 4D.14 Longitudinal Positioning of Signal Faces

Standard:

01 **Except where the width of an intersecting roadway or other conditions make it physically impractical, the signal faces for each approach to an intersection or a midblock location shall be provided as follows:**

- A. A signal face installed to satisfy the requirements for primary left-turn signal faces (see Sections 4D.17 through 4D.20) and primary right-turn signal faces (see Sections 4D.21 through 4D.24), and at least one and preferably both of the minimum of two primary signal faces required for the through movement (or the major turning movement if there is no through movement) on the approach shall be located:

- 1. No less than 40 feet beyond the stop line,
- 2. No more than 180 feet beyond the stop line unless a supplemental near-side signal face is provided, and
- 3. As near as practical to the line of the driver's normal view, if mounted over the roadway.

The primary signal face that satisfies this requirement shall simultaneously satisfy the lateral placement requirement described in Section 4D.13 (see Figure 4D-4).

- B. Where the nearest signal face is located between 150 and 180 feet beyond the stop line, engineering judgment of the conditions, including the worst-case visibility conditions, shall be used to determine if the provision of a supplemental near-side signal face would be beneficial.

Support:

02 Section 4D.11 contains additional provisions regarding longitudinal positioning of signal faces for approaches having a posted or 85th-percentile speed of 45 mph or higher.

Guidance:

03 *Supplemental near-side signal faces should be located as near as practical to the stop line.*

Section 4D.15 Mounting Height of Signal Faces

Standard:

- 01 The top of the signal housing of a vehicular signal face located over any portion of a highway that can be used by motor vehicles shall not be more than 25.6 feet above the pavement.
- 02 For viewing distances between 40 and 53 feet from the stop line, the maximum mounting height to the top of the signal housing shall be as shown in Figure 4D-5.
- 03 The bottom of the signal housing and any related attachments to a vehicular signal face located over any portion of a highway that can be used by motor vehicles shall be at least 15 feet above the pavement.
- 04 The bottom of the signal housing (including brackets) of a vehicular signal face that is vertically arranged and not located over a roadway:
- A. Shall be a minimum of 8 feet and a maximum of 19 feet above the sidewalk or, if there is no sidewalk, above the pavement grade at the center of the roadway.
 - B. Shall be a minimum of 4.5 feet and a maximum of 19 feet above the median island grade of a center median island if located on the near side of the intersection.
- 05 The bottom of the signal housing (including brackets) of a vehicular signal face that is horizontally arranged and not located over a roadway:
- A. Shall be a minimum of 8 feet and a maximum of 22 feet above the sidewalk or, if there is no sidewalk, above the pavement grade at the center of the roadway.
 - B. Shall be a minimum of 4.5 feet and a maximum of 22 feet above the median island grade of a center median island if located on the near side of the intersection.

Section 4D.16 Lateral Offset (Clearance) of Signal Faces

Standard:

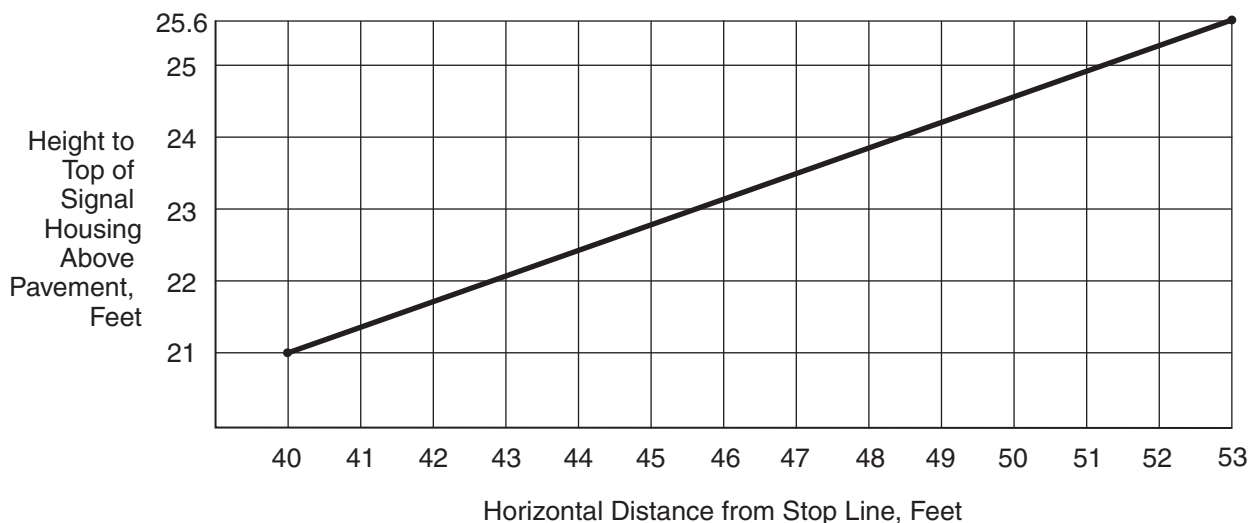
- 01 Signal faces mounted at the side of a roadway with curbs at less than 15 feet from the bottom of the housing and any related attachments shall have a horizontal offset of not less than 2 feet from the face of a vertical curb, or if there is no curb, not less than 2 feet from the edge of a shoulder.

Section 4D.17 Signal Indications for Left-Turn Movements – General

Standard:

- 01 In Sections 4D.17 through 4D.20, provisions applicable to left-turn movements and left-turn lanes shall also apply to signal indications for U-turns to the left that are provided at locations where left turns are prohibited or not geometrically possible.

Figure 4D-5. Maximum Mounting Height of Signal Faces Located Between 40 Feet and 53 Feet from Stop Line



Support:

- 02 Left-turning traffic is controlled by one of four modes as follows:
- A. Permissive Only Mode—turns made on a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication, a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication, or a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication after yielding to pedestrians, if any, and/or opposing traffic, if any.
 - B. Protected Only Mode—turns made only when a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication is displayed.
 - C. Protected/Permissive Mode—both modes can occur on an approach during the same cycle.
 - D. Variable Left-Turn Mode—the operating mode changes among the protected only mode and/or the protected/permissive mode and/or the permissive only mode during different periods of the day or as traffic conditions change.

Option:

- 03 In areas having a high percentage of older drivers, special consideration may be given to the use of protected only mode left-turn phasing, when appropriate.

Standard:

- 04 During a permissive left-turn movement, the signal faces for through traffic in the opposing approach shall simultaneously display green or steady yellow signal indications. If pedestrians crossing the lane or lanes used by the permissive left-turn movement to depart the intersection are controlled by pedestrian signal heads, the signal indications displayed by those pedestrian signal heads shall not be limited to any particular display during the permissive left-turn movement.
- 05 During a protected left-turn movement, the signal faces for through traffic in the opposing approach shall simultaneously display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications. If pedestrians crossing the lane or lanes used by the protected left-turn movement to depart the intersection are controlled by pedestrian signal heads, the pedestrian signal heads shall display a steady UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication during the protected left-turn movement.
- 06 A protected only mode left-turn movement that does not begin and terminate at the same time as the adjacent through movement shall not be provided on an approach unless an exclusive left-turn lane exists.
- 07 A yellow change interval for the left-turn movement shall not be displayed when the status of the left-turn operation is changing from permissive to protected within any given signal sequence.
- 08 If the operating mode changes among the protected only mode and/or the protected/permissive mode and/or the permissive only mode during different periods of the day or as traffic conditions change, the requirements in Sections 4D.18 through 4D.20 that are appropriate to that mode of operation shall be met, subject to the following:
- A. The CIRCULAR GREEN and CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indications shall not be displayed when operating in the protected only mode.
 - B. The left-turn GREEN ARROW and left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indications shall not be displayed when operating in the permissive only mode.

Option:

- 09 Additional static signs or changeable message signs may be used to meet the requirements for the variable left-turn mode or to inform drivers that left-turn green arrows will not be available during certain times of the day.

Support:

- 10 Sections 4D.17 through 4D.20 describe the use of the following two types of signal faces for controlling left-turn movements:
- A. Shared signal face – This type of signal face controls both the left-turn movement and the adjacent movement (usually the through movement) and can serve as one of the two required primary signal faces for the adjacent movement. A shared signal face always displays the same color of circular indication that is displayed by the signal face or faces for the adjacent movement. If a shared signal face that provides protected/permissive mode left turns is mounted overhead at the intersection, it is usually positioned over or slightly to the right of the extension of the lane line separating the left-turn lane from the adjacent lane.
 - B. Separate left-turn signal face – This type of signal face controls only the left-turn movement and cannot serve as one of the two required primary signal faces for the adjacent movement (usually the through movement) because it displays signal indications that are applicable only to the left-turn movement. If a separate left-turn signal face is mounted overhead at the intersection, it is positioned over the extension of the left-turn lane. In a separate left-turn signal face, a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication or a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication is used to control permissive left-turning movements.

- 11 Section 4D.13 contains provisions regarding the lateral positioning of signal faces that control left-turn movements.
- 12 It is not necessary that the same mode of left-turn operation or same type of left-turn signal face be used on every approach to a signalized location. Selecting different modes and types of left-turn signal faces for the various approaches to the same signalized location is acceptable.

Option:

- 13 A signal face that is shared by left-turning and right-turning traffic may be provided for a shared left-turn/right-turn lane on an approach that has no through traffic (see Section 4D.25).

Section 4D.18 Signal Indications for Permissive Only Mode Left-Turn Movements

Standard:

- 01 If a shared signal face is provided for a permissive only mode left turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-6):
- A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady CIRCULAR RED, steady CIRCULAR YELLOW, and CIRCULAR GREEN. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time.
 - B. During the permissive left-turn movement, a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall be displayed.
 - C. A permissive only shared signal face, regardless of where it is positioned and regardless of how many adjacent through signal faces are provided, shall always simultaneously display the same color of circular indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.
 - D. If the permissive only mode is not the only left-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same shared signal face that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.20) except that the left-turn GREEN ARROW and left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indications shall not be displayed when operating in the permissive only mode.
- 02 If a separate left-turn signal face is being operated in a permissive only left-turns mode, a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall not be used in that face.
- 03 If a separate left-turn signal face is being operated in a permissive only left-turn mode and a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-7):
- A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady left-turn RED ARROW, steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW, and flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time.

Figure 4D-6. Typical Position and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Permissive Only Mode Left Turns

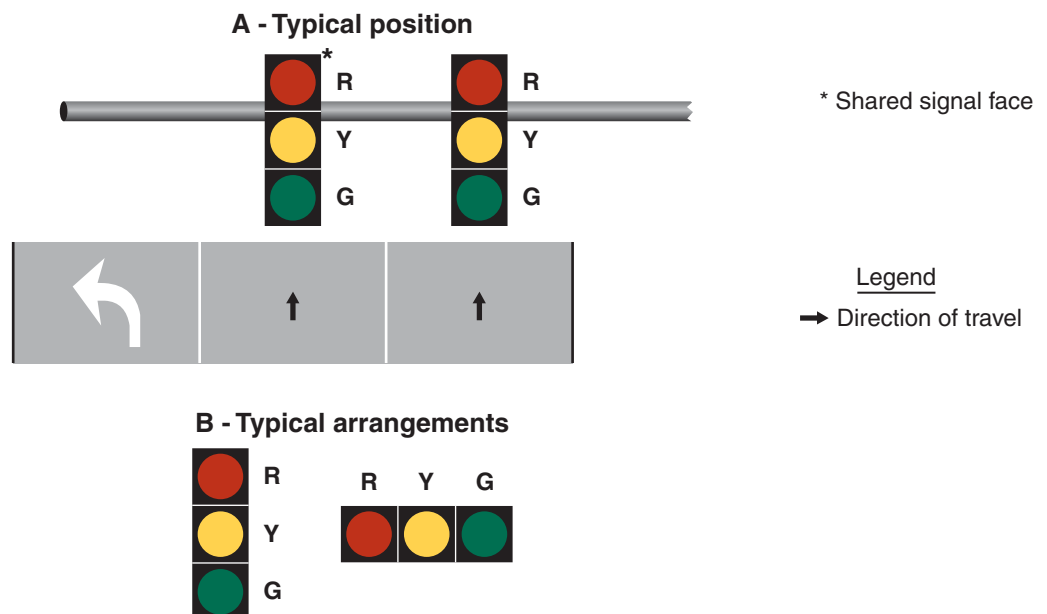
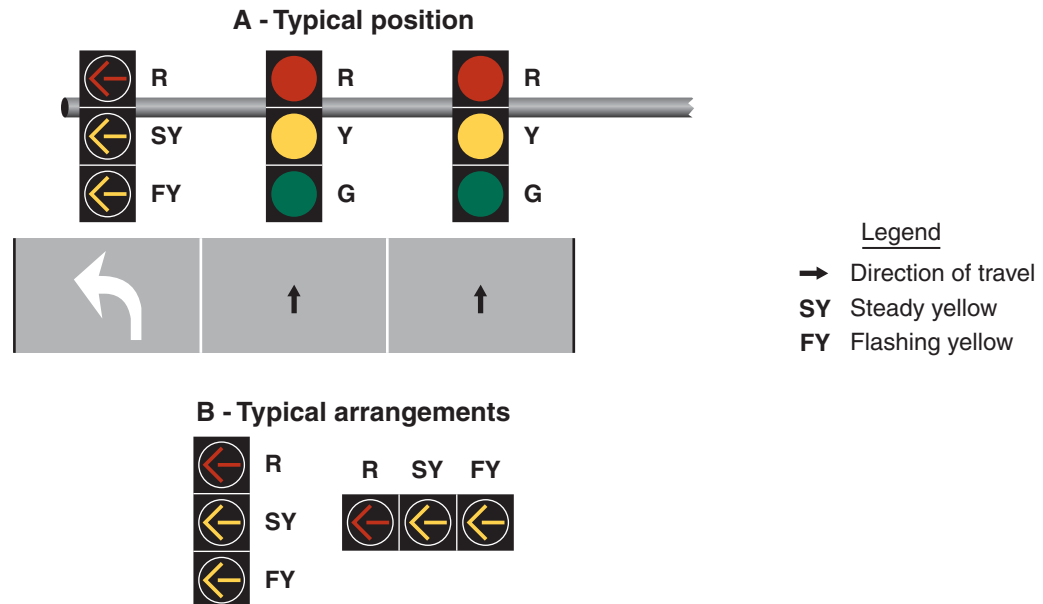


Figure 4D-7. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Permissive Only Mode Left Turns



- B. During the permissive left-turn movement, a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
- C. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication.
- D. It shall be permitted to display a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for a permissive left-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications and the opposing left-turn signal faces display left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications for a protected left-turn movement.
- E. During steady mode (stop-and-go) operation, the signal section that displays the steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during change intervals shall not be used to display the flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for permissive left turns.
- F. During flashing mode operation (see Section 4D.30), the display of a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be only from the signal section that displays a steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during steady mode (stop-and-go) operation.
- G. If the permissive only mode is not the only left-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same separate left-turn signal face with a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.20) except that the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed when operating in the permissive only mode.

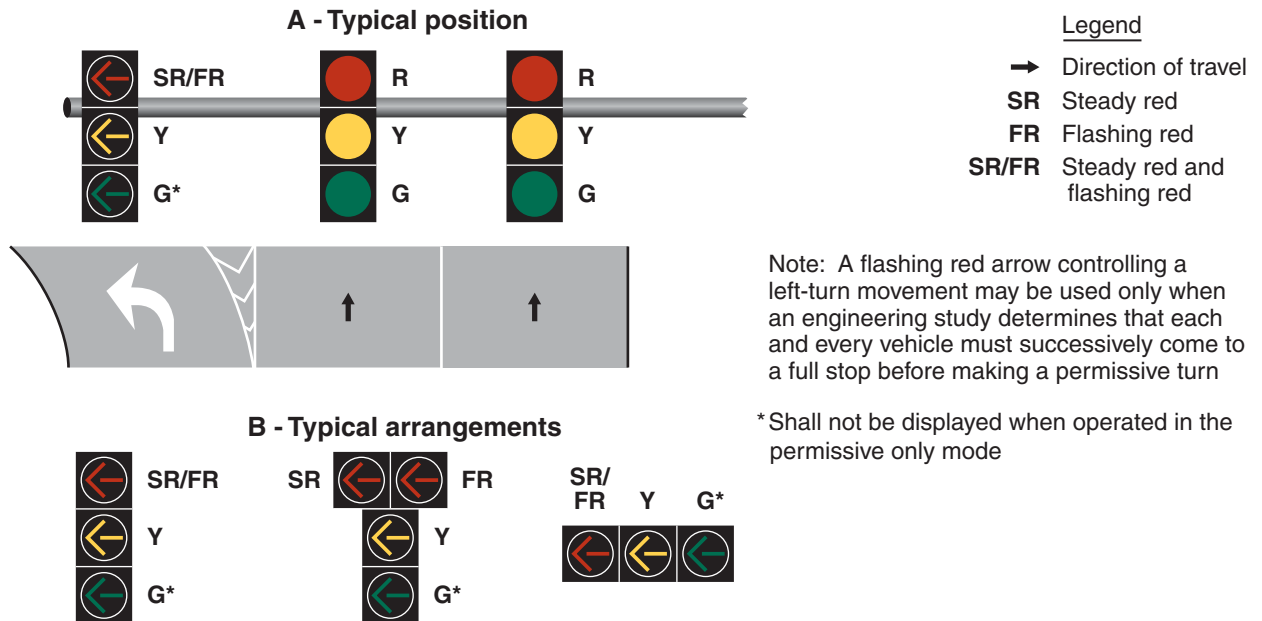
Option:

- 04 A separate left-turn signal face with a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication during the permissive left-turn movement may be used for unusual geometric conditions, such as wide medians with offset left-turn lanes, but only when an engineering study determines that each and every vehicle must successively come to a full stop before making a permissive left turn.

Standard:

- 05 If a separate left-turn signal face is being operated in a permissive only left-turn mode and a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-8):
 - A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady or flashing left-turn RED ARROW, steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW, and left-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time. The GREEN ARROW indication is required in order to provide a three-section signal face, but shall not be displayed during the permissive only mode.
 - B. During the permissive left-turn movement, a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed, thus indicating that each and every vehicle must successively come to a full stop before making a permissive left turn.

Figure 4D-8. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Red Arrow for Permissive Only Mode and Protected/Permissive Mode Left Turns



- C. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication.
- D. It shall be permitted to display a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication for a permissive left-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications and the opposing left-turn signal faces display left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications for a protected left-turn movement.
- E. A supplementary sign shall not be required. If used, it shall be a LEFT TURN YIELD ON FLASHING RED ARROW AFTER STOP (R10-27) sign (see Figure 2B-27).

Option:

- 06 The requirements of Item A in Paragraph 5 may be met by a vertically-arranged signal face with a horizontal cluster of two left-turn RED ARROW signal indications, the left-most of which displays a steady indication and the right-most of which displays a flashing indication (see Figure 4D-8).

Section 4D.19 Signal Indications for Protected Only Mode Left-Turn Movements

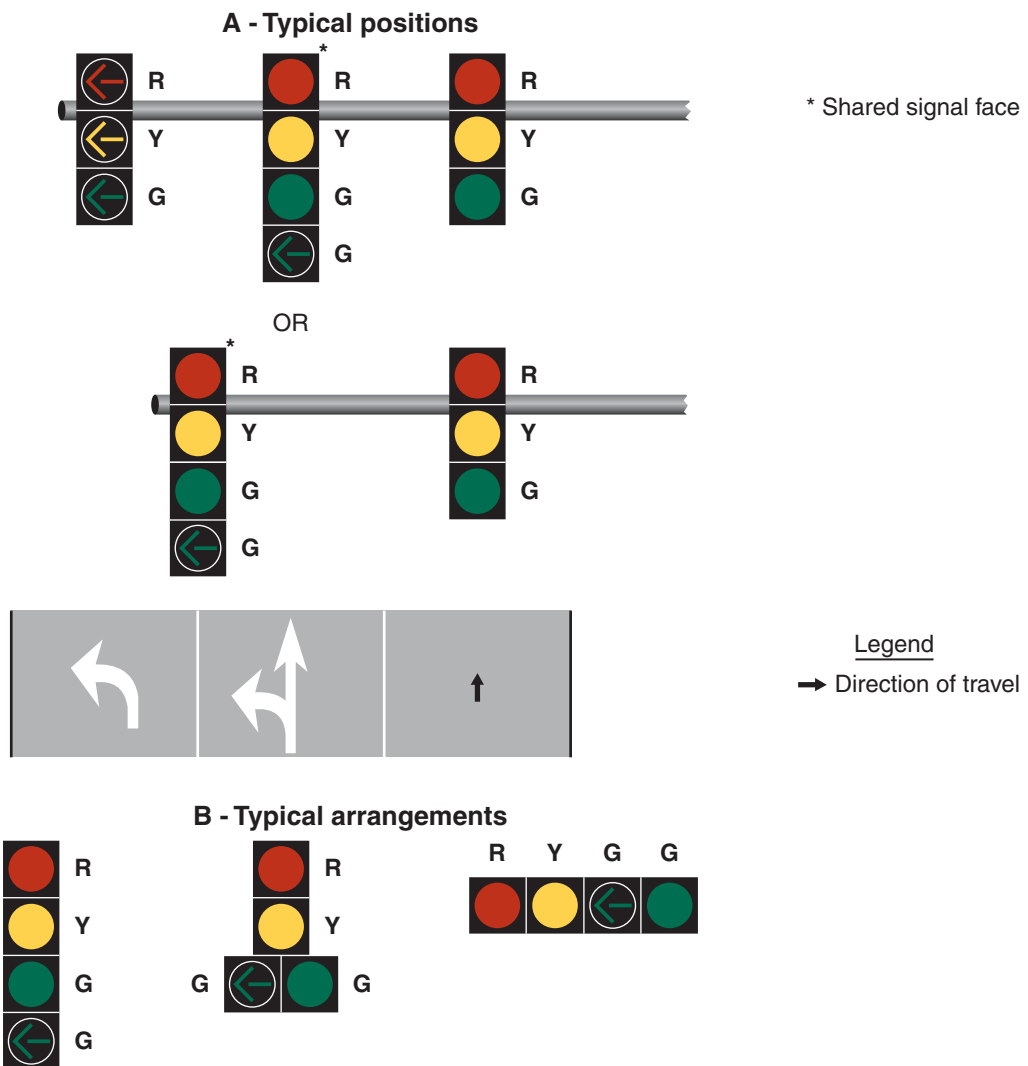
Standard:

- 01 A shared signal face shall not be used for protected only mode left turns unless the CIRCULAR GREEN and left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications always begin and terminate together. If a shared signal face is provided for a protected only mode left turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-9):
- A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady CIRCULAR RED, steady CIRCULAR YELLOW, CIRCULAR GREEN, and left-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three colors shall be displayed at any given time.
 - B. During the protected left-turn movement, the shared signal face shall simultaneously display both a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication and a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
 - C. The shared signal face shall always simultaneously display the same color of circular indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.
 - D. If the protected only mode is not the only left-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same shared signal face that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.20).

Option:

- 02 A straight-through GREEN ARROW signal indication may be used instead of the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication in Items A and B in Paragraph 1 on an approach where right turns are prohibited and a straight-through GREEN ARROW signal indication is also used instead of a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication in the other signal face(s) for through traffic.

Figure 4D-9. Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Left Turns

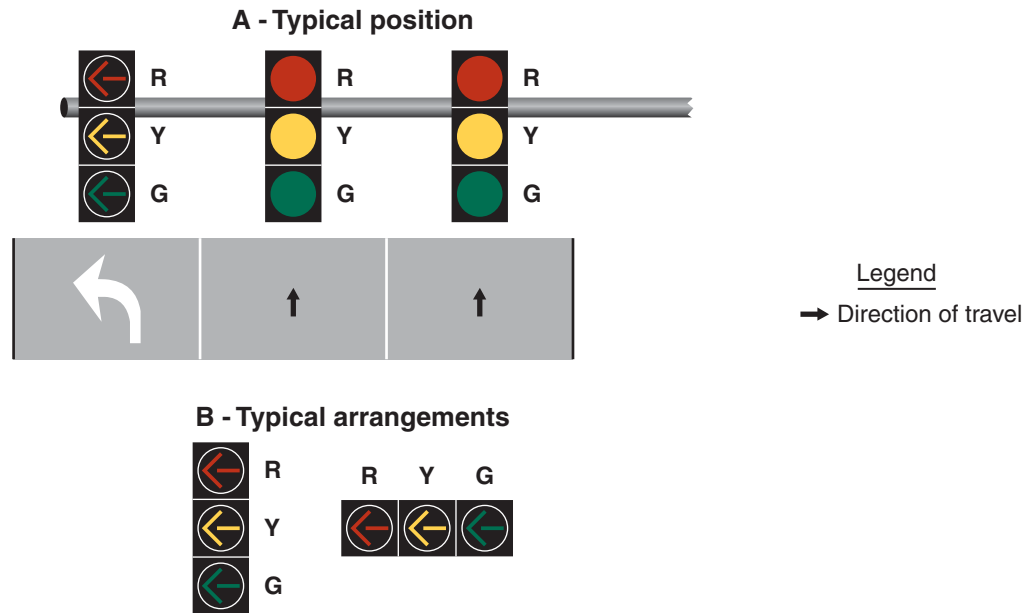


Note: Shared signal faces shall only be used for a protected-only mode left turn if the circular green and green left-turn indications always begin and terminate together

Standard:

- 03 If a separate left-turn signal face is provided for a protected only mode left turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-10):
- It shall be capable of displaying, the following signal indications: steady left-turn RED ARROW, steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW, and left-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time. A signal instruction sign shall not be required with this set of signal indications. If used, it shall be a LEFT ON GREEN ARROW ONLY (R10-5) sign (see Figure 2B-27).
 - During the protected left-turn movement, a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
 - A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
 - If the protected only mode is not the only left-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same separate left-turn signal face that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.20 and Figures 4D-8 and 4D-12) except that the flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW or flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed when operating in the protected only mode.

Figure 4D-10. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Left Turns

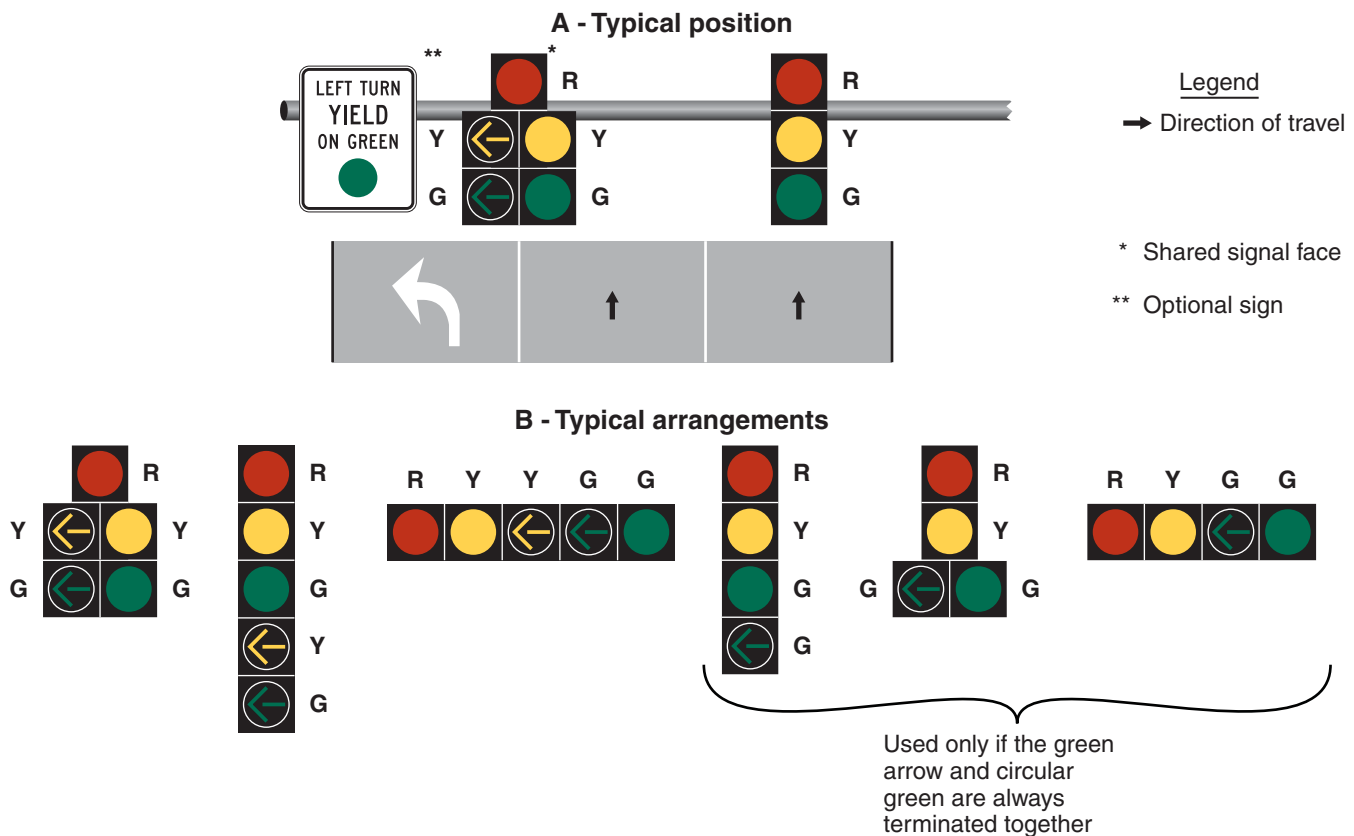


Section 4D.20 Signal Indications for Protected/Permissive Mode Left-Turn Movements

Standard:

- 01 If a shared signal face is provided for a protected/permissive mode left turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-11):
- It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady CIRCULAR RED, steady CIRCULAR YELLOW, CIRCULAR green, steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW, and left-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three circular indications shall be displayed at any given time. Only one of the two arrow indications shall be displayed at any given time. If the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication and the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication(s) for the adjacent through movement are always terminated together, the steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall not be required.
 - During the protected left-turn movement, the shared signal face shall simultaneously display a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication and a circular signal indication that is the same color as the signal indication for the adjacent through lane on the same approach as the protected left turn.
 - A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication, unless the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication and the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication(s) for the adjacent through movement are being terminated together. When the left-turn GREEN ARROW and CIRCULAR GREEN signal indications are being terminated together, the required display following the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be either the display of a CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication alone or the simultaneous display of the CIRCULAR YELLOW and left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indications.
 - During the permissive left-turn movement, the shared signal face shall display only a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication.
 - A protected/permissive shared signal face, regardless of where it is positioned and regardless of how many adjacent through signal faces are provided, shall always simultaneously display the same color of circular indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.
 - A supplementary sign shall not be required. If used, it shall be a LEFT TURN YIELD ON GREEN (symbolic circular green) (R10-12) sign (see Figure 2B-27).
- 02 If a separate left-turn signal face is being operated in a protected/permissive left-turn mode, a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall not be used in that face.

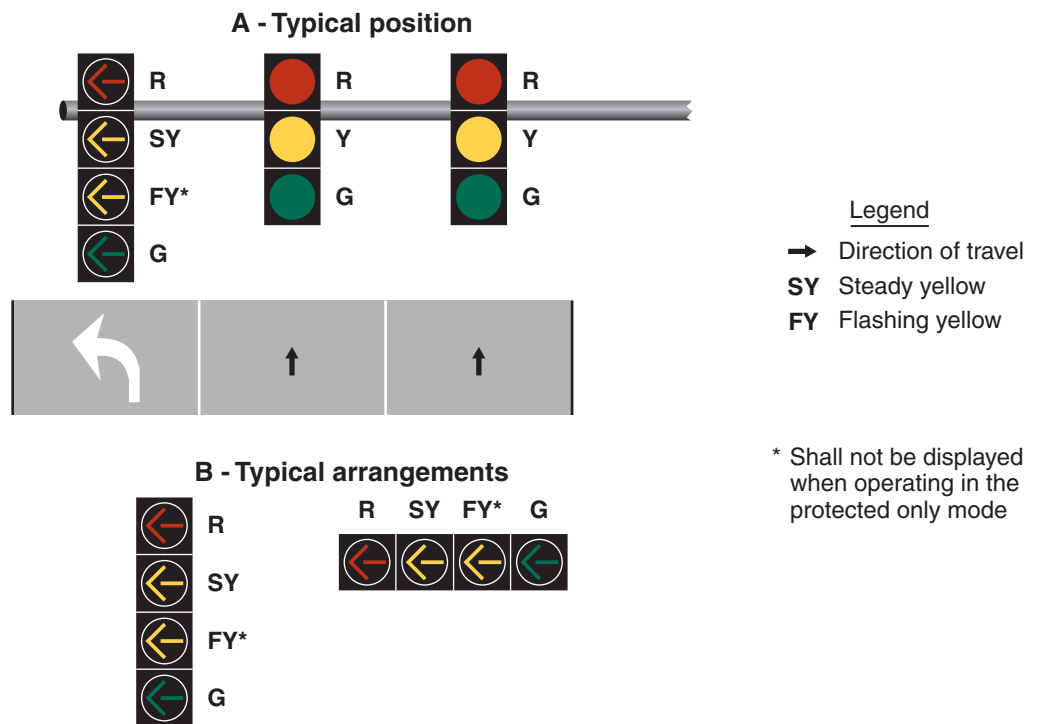
Figure 4D-11. Typical Position and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected/Permissive Mode Left Turns



03 If a separate left-turn signal face is being operated in a protected/permissive left-turn mode and a flashing left-turn yellow arrow signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-12):

- A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady left-turn RED ARROW, steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW, flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW, and left-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the four indications shall be displayed at any given time.
- B. During the protected left-turn movement, a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
- C. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
- D. During the permissive left-turn movement, a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
- E. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication if the permissive left-turn movement is being terminated and the separate left-turn signal face will subsequently display a steady left-turn RED ARROW indication.
- F. It shall be permitted to display a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for a permissive left-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications and the opposing left-turn signal faces display left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications for a protected left-turn movement.
- G. When a permissive left-turn movement is changing to a protected left-turn movement, a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed immediately upon the termination of the flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed between the display of the flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication and the display of the steady left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.

Figure 4D-12. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Protected/Permissive Mode and Protected Only Mode Left Turns



- H. The display shall be a four-section signal face except that a three-section signal face containing a dual-arrow signal section shall be permitted where signal head height limitations (or lateral positioning limitations for a horizontally-mounted signal face) will not permit the use of a four-section signal face. The dual-arrow signal section, where used, shall display a GREEN ARROW for the protected left-turn movement and a flashing YELLOW ARROW for the permissive left-turn movement.
- I. During steady mode (stop-and-go) operation, the signal section that displays the steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during change intervals shall not be used to display the flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for permissive left turns.
- J. During flashing mode operation (see Section 4D.30), the display of a flashing left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be only from the signal section that displays a steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during steady mode (stop-and-go) operation.

Option:

- 04 A separate left-turn signal face with a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication during the permissive left-turn movement may be used for unusual geometric conditions, such as wide medians with offset left-turn lanes, but only when an engineering study determines that each and every vehicle must successively come to a full stop before making a permissive left turn.

Standard:

- 05 If a separate left-turn signal face is being operated in a protected/permissive left-turn mode and a flashing left-turn RED arrow signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-8):
 - A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady or flashing left-turn RED ARROW, steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW, and left-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time.
 - B. During the protected left-turn movement, a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
 - C. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
 - D. During the permissive left-turn movement, a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.

- E. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication if the permissive left-turn movement is being terminated and the separate left-turn signal face will subsequently display a steady left-turn RED ARROW indication.
- F. When a permissive left-turn movement is changing to a protected left-turn movement, a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed immediately upon the termination of the flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication. A steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed between the display of the flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication and the display of the steady left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
- G. It shall be permitted to display a flashing left-turn RED ARROW signal indication for a permissive left-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications and the opposing left-turn signal faces display left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications for a protected left-turn movement.
- H. A supplementary sign shall not be required. If used, it shall be a LEFT TURN YIELD ON FLASHING RED ARROW AFTER STOP (R10-27) sign (see Figure 2B-27).

Option:

- 06 The requirements of Item A in Paragraph 5 may be met by a vertically-arranged signal face with a horizontal cluster of two left-turn RED ARROW signal indications, the left-most of which displays a steady indication and the right-most of which displays a flashing indication (see Figure 4D-8).

Section 4D.21 Signal Indications for Right-Turn Movements – General

Standard:

- 01 In Sections 4D.21 through 4D.24, provisions applicable to right-turn movements and right-turn lanes shall also apply to signal indications for U-turns to the right that are provided at locations where right turns are prohibited or not geometrically possible.

Support:

- 02 Right-turning traffic is controlled by one of four modes as follows:
- A. Permissive Only Mode—turns made on a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication, a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication, or a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication after yielding to pedestrians, if any.
 - B. Protected Only Mode—turns made only when a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication is displayed.
 - C. Protected/Permissive Mode—both modes occur on an approach during the same cycle.
 - D. Variable Right-Turn Mode—the operating mode changes among the protected only mode and/or the protected/permissive mode and/or the permissive only mode during different periods of the day or as traffic conditions change.

Standard:

- 03 During a permissive right-turn movement, the signal faces, if any, that exclusively control U-turn traffic that conflicts with the permissive right-turn movement (see Item F.1 in Section 4D.05) shall simultaneously display steady U-turn RED ARROW signal indications. If pedestrians crossing the lane or lanes used by the permissive right-turn movement to depart the intersection are controlled by pedestrian signal heads, the signal indications displayed by those pedestrian signal heads shall not be limited to any particular display during the permissive right-turn movement.
- 04 During a protected right-turn movement, the signal faces for left-turn traffic, if any, on the opposing approach shall not simultaneously display a steady left-turn GREEN ARROW or steady left-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication, and signal faces, if any, that exclusively control U-turn traffic that conflicts with the protected right-turn movement (see Item F.1 in Section 4D.05) shall simultaneously display steady U-turn RED ARROW signal indications. If pedestrians crossing the lane or lanes used by the protected right-turn movement to depart the intersection are controlled by pedestrian signal heads, the pedestrian signal heads shall display a steady UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication during the protected right-turn movement.
- 05 A protected only mode right-turn movement that does not begin and terminate at the same time as the adjacent through movement shall not be provided on an approach unless an exclusive right-turn lane exists.
- 06 A yellow change interval for the right-turn movement shall not be displayed when the status of the right-turn operation is changing from permissive to protected within any given signal sequence.

- 07 **If the operating mode changes among the protected only mode and/or the protected/permissive mode and/or the permissive only mode during different periods of the day or as traffic conditions change, the requirements in Sections 4D.22 through 4D.24 that are appropriate to that mode of operation shall be met, subject to the following:**
- A. **The CIRCULAR GREEN and CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indications shall not be displayed when operating in the protected only mode.**
 - B. **The right-turn GREEN ARROW and right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indications shall not be displayed when operating in the permissive only mode.**

Option:

- 08 Additional static signs or changeable message signs may be used to meet the requirements for the variable right-turn mode or to inform drivers that right-turn green arrows will not be available during certain times of the day.

Support:

- 09 Sections 4D.21 through 4D.24 describe the use of the following two types of signal faces for controlling right-turn movements:
- A. **Shared signal face** – This type of signal face controls both the right-turn movement and the adjacent movement (usually the through movement) and can serve as one of the two required primary signal faces for the adjacent movement. A shared signal face always displays the same color of circular indication that is displayed by the signal face or faces for the adjacent movement.
 - B. **Separate right-turn signal face** – This type of signal face controls only the right-turn movement and cannot serve as one of the two required primary signal faces for the adjacent movement (usually the through movement) because it displays signal indications that are applicable only to the right-turn movement. If a separate right-turn signal face is mounted overhead at the intersection, it is positioned over the extension of the right-turn lane. In a separate right-turn signal face, a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication or a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication is used to control permissive right-turning movements.
- 10 Section 4D.13 contains provisions regarding the lateral positioning of signal faces that control right-turn movements.
- 11 It is not necessary that the same mode of right-turn operation or same type of right-turn signal face be used on every approach to a signalized location. Selecting different modes and types of right-turn signal faces for the various approaches to the same signalized location is acceptable.

Option:

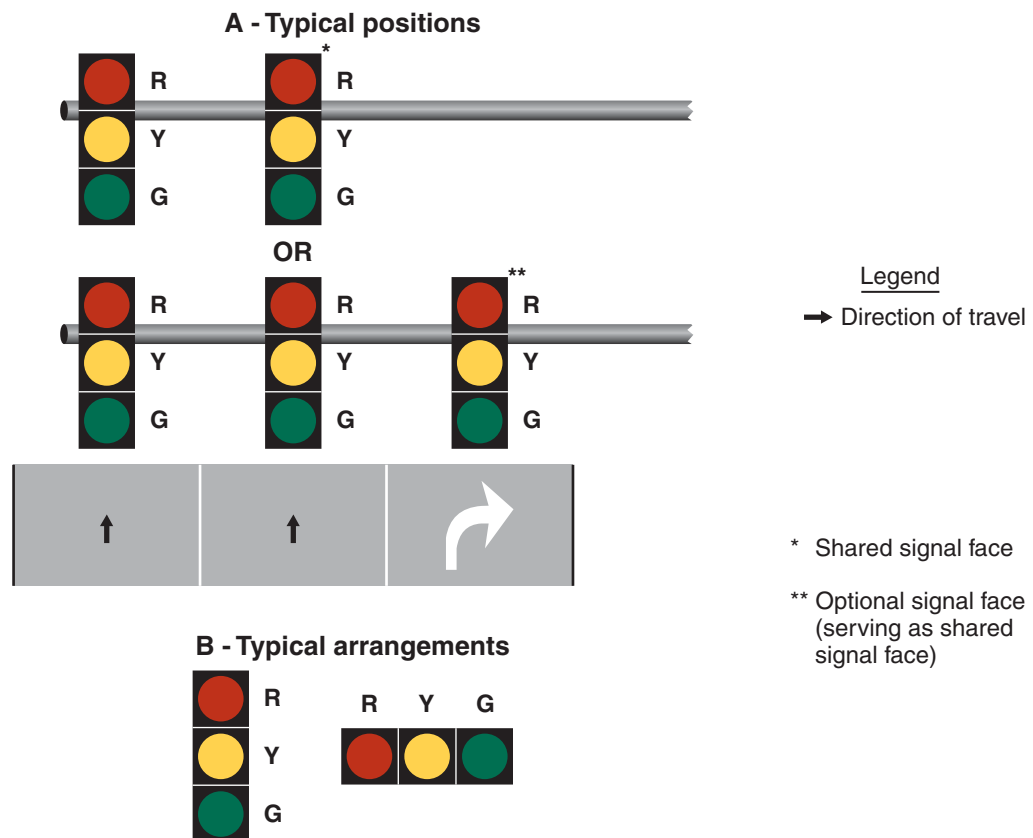
- 12 A signal face that is shared by left-turning and right-turning traffic may be provided for a shared left-turn/right-turn lane on an approach that has no through traffic (see Section 4D.25).

Section 4D.22 Signal Indications for Permissive Only Mode Right-Turn Movements

Standard:

- 01 **If a shared signal face is provided for a permissive only mode right turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-13):**
- A. **It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady CIRCULAR RED, steady CIRCULAR YELLOW, and CIRCULAR GREEN. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time.**
 - B. **During the permissive right-turn movement, a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall be displayed.**
 - C. **A permissive only shared signal face, regardless of where it is positioned and regardless of how many adjacent through signal faces are provided, shall always simultaneously display the same color of circular indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.**
 - D. **If the permissive only mode is not the only right-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same shared signal face that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.24) except that the right-turn GREEN ARROW and right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indications shall not be displayed when operating in the permissive only mode.**
- 02 **If a separate right-turn signal face is being operated in a permissive only right-turn mode, a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall not be used in that face.**

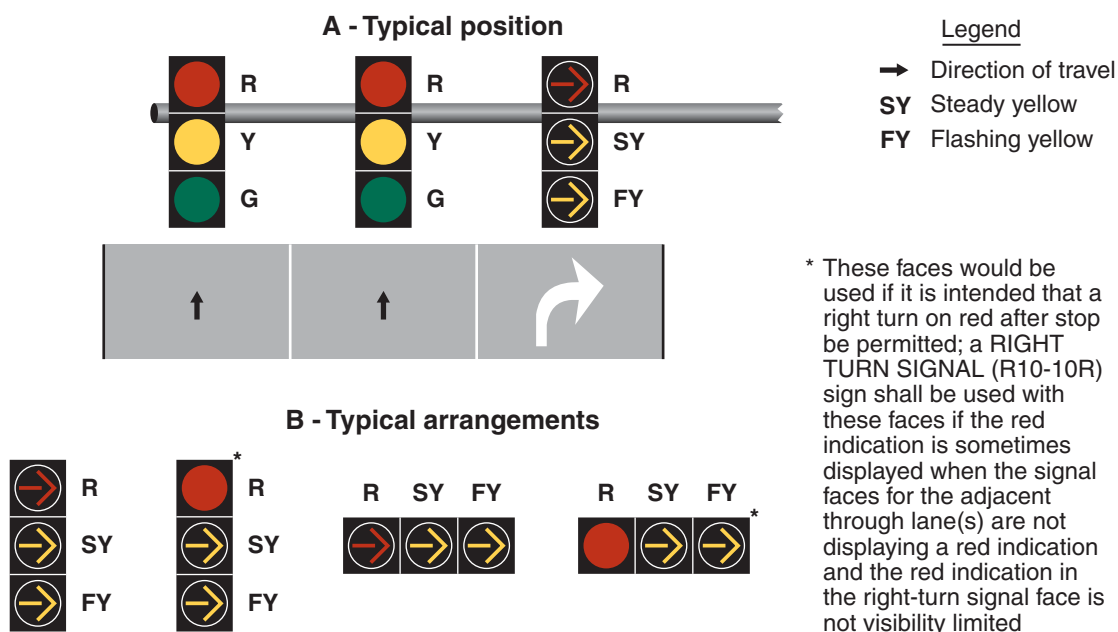
Figure 4D-13. Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Permissive Only Mode Right Turns



03 If a separate right-turn signal face is being operated in a permissive only right-turn mode and a flashing right-turn yellow arrow signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-14):

- A. It shall be capable of displaying one of the following sets of signal indications:
 1. Steady right-turn RED ARROW, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time.
 2. Steady CIRCULAR RED, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time. If the CIRCULAR RED signal indication is sometimes displayed when the signal faces for the adjacent through lane(s) are not displaying a CIRCULAR RED signal indication, a RIGHT TURN SIGNAL (R10-10R) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used unless the CIRCULAR RED signal indication in the separate right-turn signal face is shielded, hooded, louvered, positioned, or designed such that it is not readily visible to drivers in the through lane(s).
- B. During the permissive right-turn movement, a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
- C. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication.
- D. When the separate right-turn signal face is providing a message to stop and remain stopped, a steady right-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red not be permitted (except when a traffic control device is in place permitting a turn on a steady RED ARROW signal indication) or a steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red be permitted.
- E. It shall be permitted to display a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for a permissive right-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications.
- F. During steady mode (stop-and-go) operation, the signal section that displays the steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during change intervals shall not be used to display the flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for permissive right turns.

Figure 4D-14. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Permissive Only Mode Right Turns



G. During flashing mode operation (see Section 4D.30), the display of a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be only from the signal section that displays a steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during steady mode (stop-and-go) operation.

H. If the permissive only mode is not the only right-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same separate right-turn signal face with a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.24) except that the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed when operating in the permissive only mode.

Option:

- 04 When an engineering study determines that each and every vehicle must successively come to a full stop before making a permissive right turn, a separate right-turn signal face with a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication during the permissive right-turn movement may be used.

Standard:

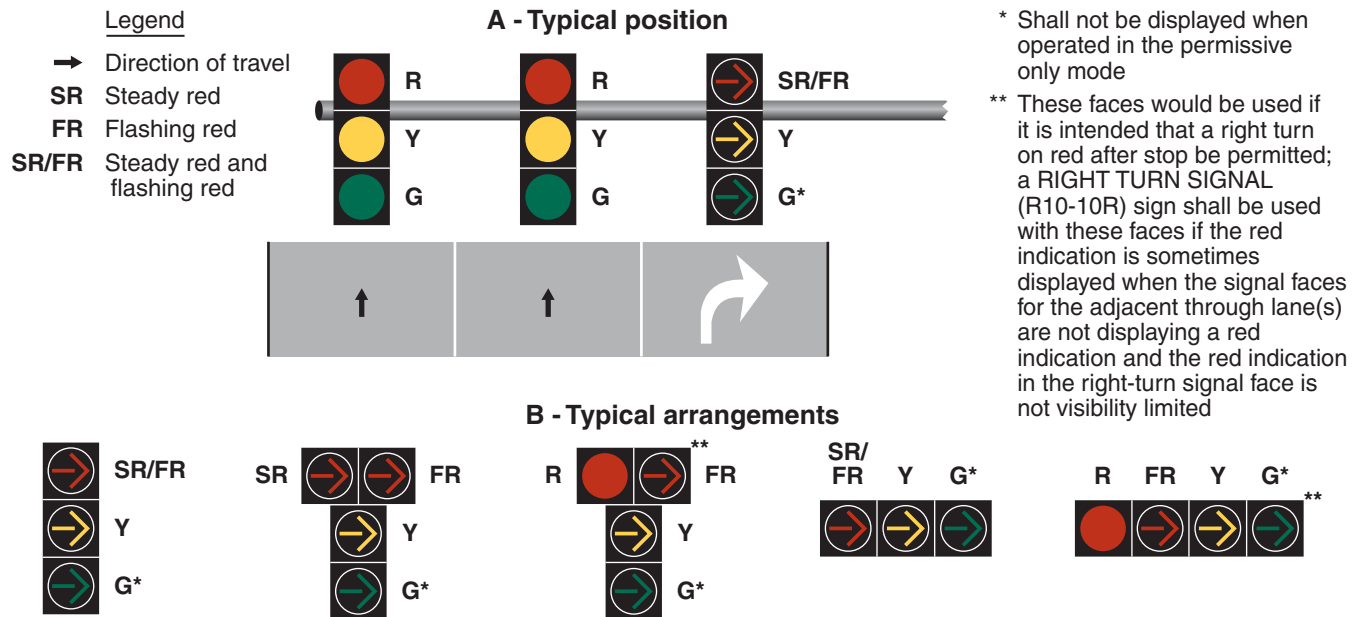
- 05 If a separate right-turn signal face is being operated in a permissive only right-turn mode and a flashing right-turn RED arrow signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-15):

A. It shall be capable of displaying one of the following sets of signal indications:

1. Steady or flashing right-turn RED ARROW, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time. The GREEN ARROW indication is required in order to provide a three-section signal face, but shall not be displayed during permissive only mode.
2. Steady CIRCULAR RED on the left and steady right-turn RED ARROW on the right of the top position, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW in the middle position, and right-turn GREEN ARROW in the bottom position. Only one of the four indications shall be displayed at any given time. The GREEN ARROW indication is required in order to provide three vertical positions, but shall not be displayed during permissive only mode. If the CIRCULAR RED signal indication is sometimes displayed when the signal faces for the adjacent through lane(s) are not displaying a CIRCULAR RED signal indication, a RIGHT TURN SIGNAL (R10-10R) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used unless the CIRCULAR RED signal indication in the separate right-turn signal face is shielded, hooded, louvered, positioned, or designed such that it is not readily visible to drivers in the through lane(s).

B. During the permissive right-turn movement, a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed, thus indicating that each and every vehicle must successively come to a full stop before making a permissive right turn.

Figure 4D-15. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Red Arrow for Permissive Only Mode and Protected/Permissive Mode Right Turns



Note: A flashing red arrow controlling a right-turn movement may be used only when an engineering study determines that each and every vehicle must successively come to a full stop before making a permissive turn

- C. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication.
- D. When the separate right-turn signal face is providing a message to stop and remain stopped, a steady right-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red not be permitted (except when a traffic control device is in place permitting a turn on a steady RED ARROW signal indication) or a steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red be permitted.
- E. The display of a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication for a permissive right-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications and the opposing left-turn signal faces display left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications for a protected left-turn movement shall be permitted.
- F. A supplementary sign shall not be required. If used, it shall be a RIGHT TURN YIELD ON FLASHING RED ARROW AFTER STOP (R10-27) sign (see Figure 2B-27).

Option:

- 06 The requirements of Item A.1 in Paragraph 5 may be met by a vertically-arranged signal face with a horizontal cluster of two right-turn RED ARROW signal indications, the left-most of which displays a steady indication and the right-most of which displays a flashing indication (see Figure 4D-15).

Section 4D.23 Signal Indications for Protected Only Mode Right-Turn Movements

Standard:

- 01 A shared signal face shall not be used for protected only mode right turns unless the CIRCULAR GREEN and right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications always begin and terminate together. If a shared signal face is provided for a protected only right turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-16):
 - A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady CIRCULAR RED, steady CIRCULAR YELLOW, CIRCULAR GREEN, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three colors shall be displayed at any given time.
 - B. During the protected right-turn movement, the shared signal face shall simultaneously display both a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication and a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
 - C. The shared signal face shall always simultaneously display the same color of circular indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.

- D. If the protected only mode is not the only right-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same shared signal face that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.24).**

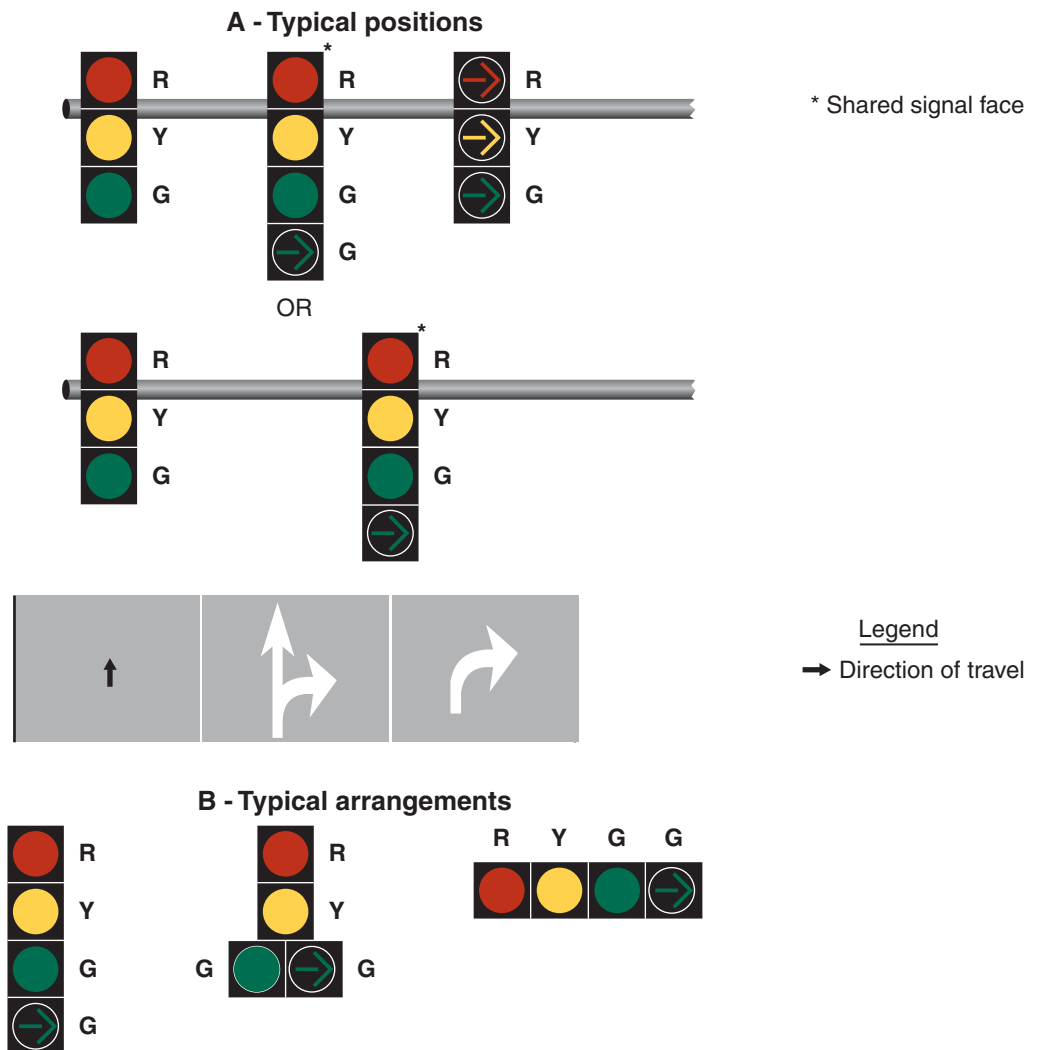
Option:

- 02 A straight-through GREEN ARROW signal indication may be used instead of the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication in Items A and B in Paragraph 1 on an approach where left turns are prohibited and a straight-through GREEN ARROW signal indication is also used instead of a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication in the other signal face(s) for through traffic.

Standard:

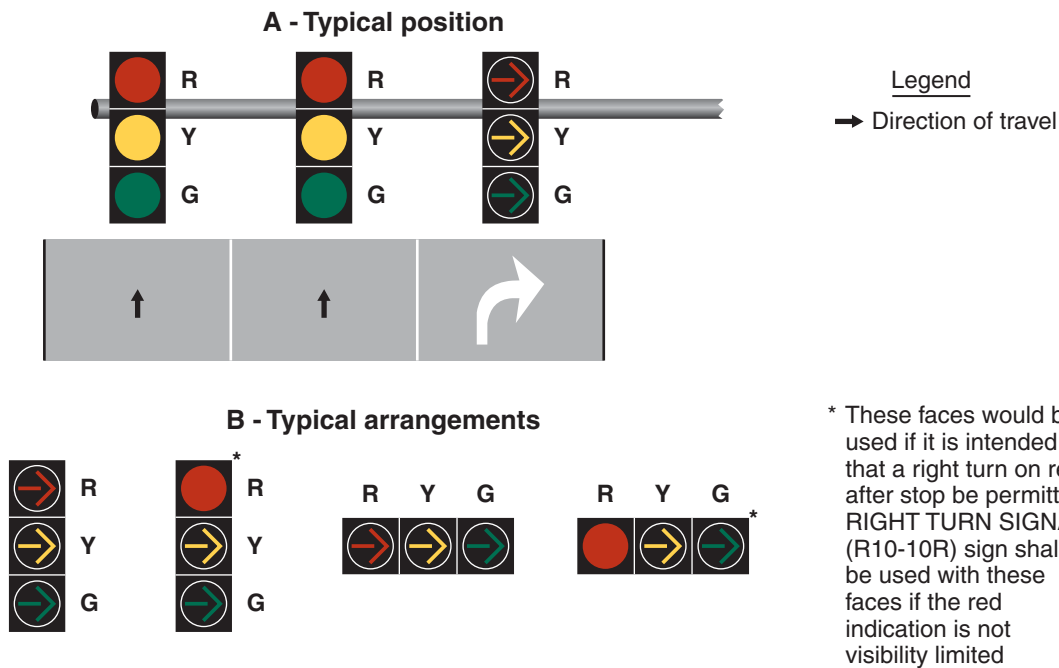
- 03 **If a separate right-turn signal face is provided for a protected only mode right turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-17):**
- A. It shall be capable of displaying one of the following sets of signal indications:**
1. **Steady right-turn RED ARROW, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time. A signal instruction sign shall not be required with this set of signal indications. If used, it shall be a RIGHT ON GREEN ARROW ONLY (R10-5a) sign (see Figure 2B-27).**

Figure 4D-16. Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Right Turns



Note: Shared signal faces shall only be used for a protected-only mode right turn if the circular green and green right-turn arrow indications always begin and terminate together

Figure 4D-17. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Right Turns



2. Steady CIRCULAR RED, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of three indications shall be displayed at any given time. If the CIRCULAR RED signal indication is sometimes displayed when the signal faces for the adjacent through lane(s) are not displaying a CIRCULAR RED signal indication, a RIGHT TURN SIGNAL (R10-10R) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used unless the CIRCULAR RED signal indication is shielded, hooded, louvered, positioned, or designed such that it is not readily visible to drivers in the through lane(s).

- B. During the protected right-turn movement, a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
- C. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
- D. When the separate signal face is providing a message to stop and remain stopped, a steady right-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red not be permitted (except when a traffic control device is in place permitting a turn on a steady RED ARROW signal indication) or a steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red be permitted.
- E. If the protected only mode is not the only right-turn mode used for the approach, the signal face shall be the same separate right-turn signal face that is used for the protected/permissive mode (see Section 4D.24 and Figure 4D-19) except that a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW or flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed when operating in the protected only mode.

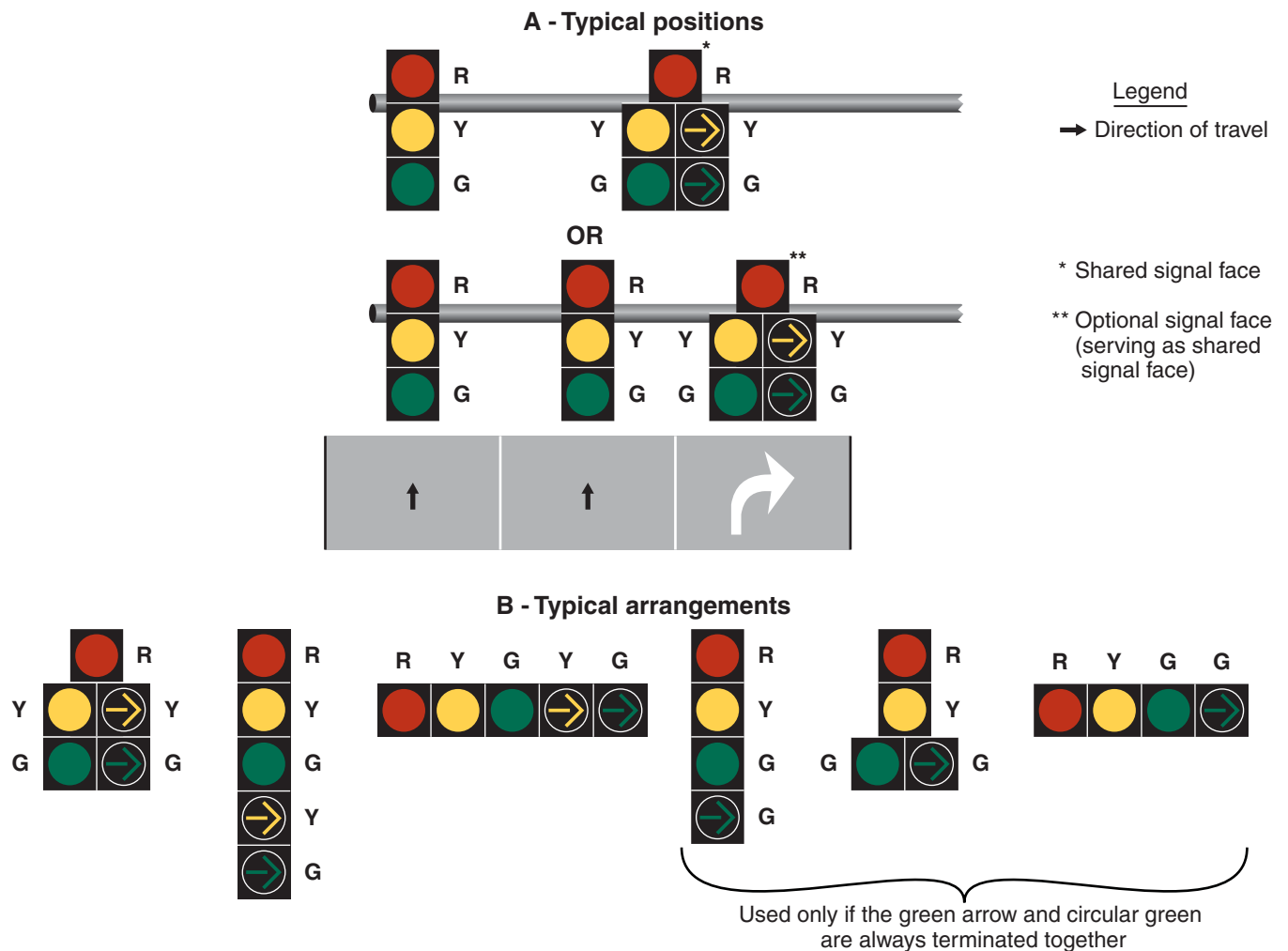
Section 4D.24 Signal Indications for Protected/Permissive Mode Right-Turn Movements

Standard:

- 01 If a shared signal face is provided for a protected/permissive mode right turn, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-18):

- A. It shall be capable of displaying the following signal indications: steady CIRCULAR RED, steady CIRCULAR YELLOW, CIRCULAR green, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three circular indications shall be displayed at any given time. Only one of the two arrow indications shall be displayed at any given time. If the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication and the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication(s) for the adjacent through movement are always terminated together, the steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall not be required.

Figure 4D-18. Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected/Permissive Mode Right Turns



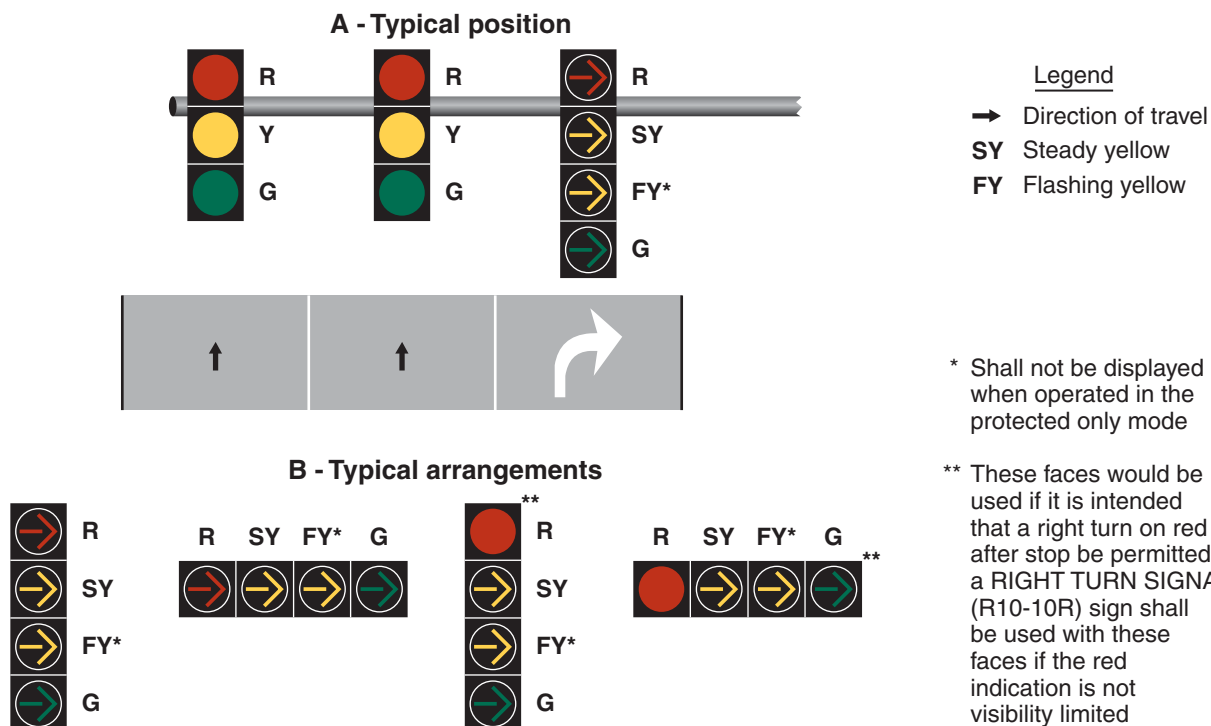
- B. During the protected right-turn movement, the shared signal face shall simultaneously display a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication and a circular signal indication that is the same color as the signal indication for the adjacent through lane on the same approach as the protected right turn.
- C. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication, unless the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication and the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication(s) for the adjacent through movement are being terminated together. When the right-turn GREEN ARROW and CIRCULAR GREEN signal indications are being terminated together, the required display following the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be either the display of a CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication alone or the simultaneous display of the CIRCULAR YELLOW and right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indications.
- D. During the permissive right-turn movement, the shared signal face shall display only a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication.
- E. A protected/permissive shared signal face, regardless of where it is positioned and regardless of how many adjacent through signal faces are provided, shall always simultaneously display the same color of circular indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.

02 If a separate right-turn signal face is being operated in a protected/permissive right-turn mode, a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication shall not be used in that face.

03 If a separate right-turn signal face is being operated in a protected/permmissive right-turn mode and a flashing right-turn yellow arrow signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-19):

- A. It shall be capable of displaying one of the following sets of signal indications:
 1. Steady right-turn RED ARROW, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the four indications shall be displayed at any given time.
 2. Steady CIRCULAR RED, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the four indications shall be displayed at any given time. If the CIRCULAR RED signal indication is sometimes displayed when the signal faces for the adjacent through lane(s) are not displaying a CIRCULAR RED signal indication, a RIGHT TURN SIGNAL (R10-10R) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used unless the CIRCULAR RED signal indication in the separate right-turn signal face is shielded, hooded, louvered, positioned, or designed such that it is not readily visible to drivers in the through lane(s).
- B. During the protected right-turn movement, a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
- C. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
- D. During the permmissive right-turn movement, a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
- E. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication if the permmissive right-turn movement is being terminated and the separate right-turn signal face will subsequently display a steady red indication.
- F. When a permmissive right-turn movement is changing to a protected right-turn movement, a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed immediately upon the termination of the flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed between the display of the flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication and the display of the steady right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.

Figure 4D-19. Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Protected/Permmissive Mode and Protected Only Mode Right Turns



- G. When the separate right-turn signal face is providing a message to stop and remain stopped, a steady right-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red not be permitted (except when a traffic control device is in place permitting a turn on a steady RED ARROW signal indication) or a steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red be permitted.
- H. It shall be permitted to display a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for a permissive right-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications.
- I. A signal face containing a dual-arrow signal section in place of separate flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW and right-turn GREEN ARROW signal sections shall be permitted where signal head height limitations (or lateral positioning limitations for a horizontally-mounted signal face) are a concern. The dual-arrow signal section, where used, shall display a GREEN ARROW for the protected right-turn movement and a flashing YELLOW ARROW for the permissive right-turn movement.
- J. During steady mode (stop-and-go) operation, the signal section that displays the steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during change intervals shall not be used to display the flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication for permissive right turns.
- K. During flashing mode operation (see Section 4D.30), the display of a flashing right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be only from the signal section that displays a steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication during steady mode (stop-and-go) operation.

Option:

- 04 When an engineering study determines that each and every vehicle must successively come to a full stop before making a permissive right turn, a separate signal face that has a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication during the permissive right-turn movement may be used.

Standard:

- 05 If a separate right-turn signal face is being operated in a protected/permissive right-turn mode and a flashing right-turn RED arrow signal indication is provided, it shall meet the following requirements (see Figure 4D-15):
- A. It shall be capable of displaying one of the following sets of signal indications:
 - 1. Steady or flashing right-turn RED ARROW, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW. Only one of the three indications shall be displayed at any given time.
 - 2. Steady CIRCULAR RED on the left and steady or flashing right-turn RED ARROW on the right of the top position, steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW in the middle position, and right-turn GREEN ARROW in the bottom position. Only one of the four indications shall be displayed at any given time. If the CIRCULAR RED signal indication is sometimes displayed when the signal faces for the adjacent through lane(s) are not displaying a CIRCULAR RED signal indication, a RIGHT TURN SIGNAL (R10-10R) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used unless the CIRCULAR RED signal indication in the separate right-turn signal face is shielded, hooded, louvered, positioned, or designed such that it is not readily visible to drivers in the through lane(s).
 - B. During the protected right-turn movement, a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed.
 - C. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.
 - D. During the permissive right-turn movement, the separate right-turn signal face shall display a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication.
 - E. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be displayed following the flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication if the permissive right-turn movement is being terminated and the separate right-turn signal face will subsequently display a steady red indication.
 - F. When a permissive right-turn movement is changing to a protected right-turn movement, a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall be displayed immediately upon the termination of the flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication. A steady right-turn YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall not be displayed between the display of the flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication and the display of the steady right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication.

- G. When the separate right-turn signal face is providing a message to stop and remain stopped, a steady right-turn RED ARROW signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red not be permitted (except when a traffic control device is in place permitting a turn on a steady RED ARROW signal indication) or a steady CIRCULAR RED signal indication shall be displayed if it is intended that right turns on red be permitted.
- H. It shall be permitted to display a flashing right-turn RED ARROW signal indication for a permissive right-turn movement while the signal faces for the adjacent through movement display steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications and the opposing left-turn signal faces display left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications for a protected left-turn movement.
- I. A supplementary sign shall not be required. If used, it shall be a RIGHT TURN YIELD ON FLASHING RED ARROW AFTER STOP (R10-27) sign (see Figure 2B-27).

Option:

- 06 The requirements of Item A.1 in Paragraph 5 may be met by a vertically-arranged signal face with a horizontal cluster of two right-turn RED ARROW signal indications, the left-most of which displays a steady indication and the right-most of which displays a flashing indication (see Figure 4D-15).

Section 4D.25 Signal Indications for Approaches With Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lanes and No Through Movement

Support:

- 01 A lane that is shared by left-turn and right-turn movements is sometimes provided on an approach that has no through movement, such as the stem of a T-intersection or where the opposite approach is a one-way roadway in the opposing direction.

Standard:

- 02 When a shared left-turn/right-turn lane exists on a signalized approach, the left-turn and right-turn movements shall start and terminate simultaneously and the red signal indication used in each of the signal faces on the approach shall be a CIRCULAR RED.

Support:

- 03 This requirement for the use of CIRCULAR RED signal indications in signal faces for approaches having a shared lane for left-turn and right-turn movements is a specific exception to other provisions in this Chapter that would otherwise require the use of RED ARROW signal indications.

Standard:

- 04 The signal faces provided for an approach with a shared left-turn/right-turn lane and no through movement shall be one of the following:
 - A. Two or more signal faces, each capable of displaying CIRCULAR RED, CIRCULAR YELLOW, and CIRCULAR GREEN signal indications, shall be provided for the approach. This display shall be permissible regardless of number of exclusive left-turn and/or right-turn lanes that exist on the approach in addition to the shared left-turn/right-turn lane and regardless of whether or not there are pedestrian or opposing vehicular movements that conflict with the left-turn or right-turn movements. However, if there is an opposing approach and the signal phasing protects the left-turn movement on the approach with the shared left-turn/right-turn lane from conflicts with the opposing vehicular movements and any signalized pedestrian movements, a left-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication shall also be included in the left-most signal face and shall be displayed simultaneously with the CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication.
 - B. If the approach has one or more exclusive turn lanes in addition to the shared left-turn/right-turn lane and there is no conflict with a signalized vehicular or pedestrian movement, and GREEN ARROW signal indications are used in place of CIRCULAR GREEN signal indications on the approach, the signal faces for the approach shall be:
 - 1. A signal face(s) capable of displaying CIRCULAR RED, YELLOW ARROW, and GREEN ARROW signal indications for the exclusive turn lane(s), with the arrows pointing in the direction of the turn, and
 - 2. A shared left-turn/right-turn signal face capable of displaying CIRCULAR RED, left-turn YELLOW ARROW, left-turn GREEN ARROW, right-turn YELLOW ARROW, and right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indications, in an arrangement of signal sections that complies with the provisions of Section 4D.09 or 4D.10.
 - C. If the approach has one or more exclusive turn lanes in addition to the shared left-turn/right-turn lane and there is a conflict with a signalized vehicular or pedestrian movement, and flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indications are used in place of CIRCULAR GREEN signal indications

on the approach, the signal faces for the approach shall be as described in Items B.1 and B.2, except that flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indications shall be used in place of the GREEN ARROW signal indications for the turning movement(s) that conflicts with the signalized vehicular or pedestrian movement.

Support:

- 05 Figure 4D-20 illustrates application of these Standards on approaches that have only a shared left-turn/right-turn lane, and on approaches that have one or more exclusive turn lanes in addition to the shared left-turn/right-turn lane.

Option:

- 06 If the lane-use regulations on an approach are variable such that at certain times all of the lanes on the approach are designated as exclusive turn lanes and no lane is designated as a shared left-turn/right-turn lane:
- A. During the times that no lane is designated as a shared left-turn/right-turn lane, the left-turn and right-turn movements may start and terminate independently, and the left-turn and right-turn movements may be operated in one or more of the modes of operation as described in Sections 4D.17 through 4D.24; and
 - B. If a protected-permissive mode is used, the shared left-turn/right-turn signal face provided in Paragraph 4 may be modified to include a dual-arrow signal section capable of displaying both a GREEN ARROW signal indication and a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication for a turn movement(s) in order to not exceed the maximum of five sections per signal face provided in Section 4D.08.

Section 4D.26 Yellow Change and Red Clearance Intervals

Standard:

- 01 **A steady yellow signal indication shall be displayed following every CIRCULAR GREEN or GREEN ARROW signal indication and following every flashing YELLOW ARROW or flashing RED ARROW signal indication displayed as a part of a steady mode operation. This requirement shall not apply when a CIRCULAR GREEN, a flashing YELLOW ARROW, or a flashing RED ARROW signal indication is followed immediately by a GREEN ARROW signal indication.**
- 02 **The exclusive function of the yellow change interval shall be to warn traffic of an impending change in the right-of-way assignment.**
- 03 **The duration of the yellow change interval shall be determined using engineering practices.**

Support:

- 04 Section 4D.05 contains provisions regarding the display of steady CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indications to approaches from which drivers are allowed to make permissive left turns.

Guidance:

- 05 *When indicated by the application of engineering practices, the yellow change interval should be followed by a red clearance interval to provide additional time before conflicting traffic movements, including pedestrians, are released.*

Standard:

- 06 **When used, the duration of the red clearance interval shall be determined using engineering practices.**

Support:

- 07 Engineering practices for determining the duration of yellow change and red clearance intervals can be found in ITE's "Traffic Control Devices Handbook" and in ITE's "Manual of Traffic Signal Design" (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

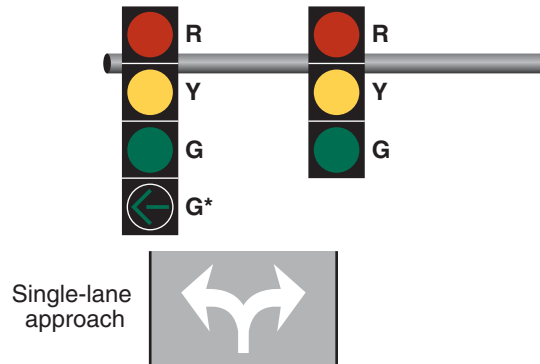
- 08 **The durations of yellow change intervals and red clearance intervals shall be consistent with the determined values within the technical capabilities of the controller unit.**
- 09 **The duration of a yellow change interval shall not vary on a cycle-by-cycle basis within the same signal timing plan.**
- 10 **Except as provided in Paragraph 12, the duration of a red clearance interval shall not be decreased or omitted on a cycle-by-cycle basis within the same signal timing plan.**

Option:

- 11 The duration of a red clearance interval may be extended from its predetermined value for a given cycle based upon the detection of a vehicle that is predicted to violate the red signal indication.
- 12 When an actuated signal sequence includes a signal phase for permissive/protected (lagging) left-turn movements in both directions, the red clearance interval may be shown during those cycles when the lagging left-turn signal phase is skipped and may be omitted during those cycles when the lagging left-turn signal phase is shown.

Figure 4D-20. Signal Indications for Approaches with a Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lane and No Through Movement (Sheet 1 of 3)

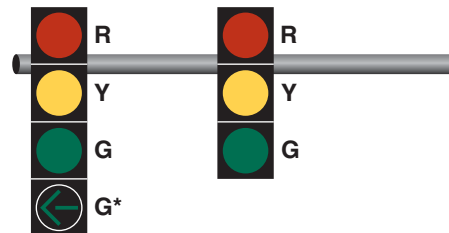
A - No conflicting vehicular or pedestrian movements



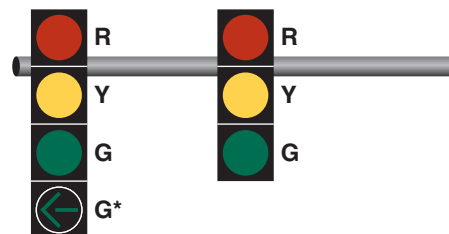
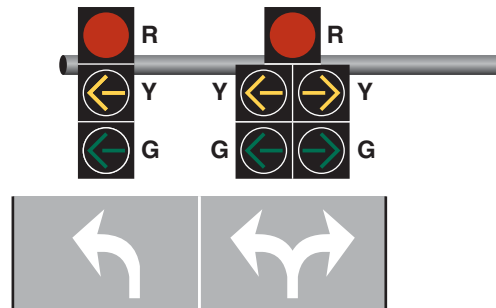
* Left-turn GREEN ARROW section shall be included if there is an opposing one-way approach and the signal phasing eliminates conflicts.

Notes:

1. Horizontally-aligned signal faces may also be used.
2. Shared signal faces may also be 5 sections in a vertical straight line instead of a cluster.



OR



OR

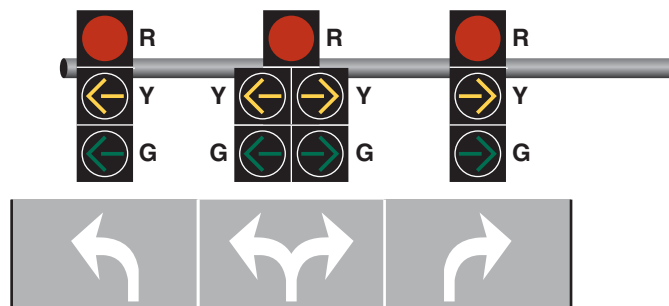
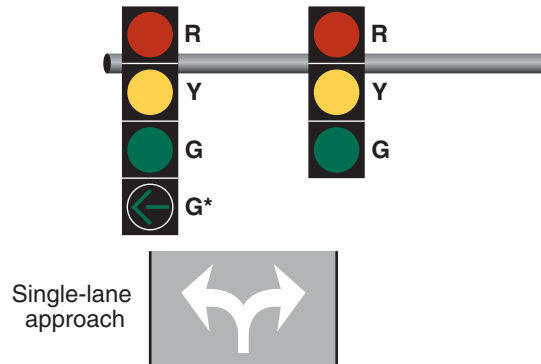


Figure 4D-20. Signal Indications for Approaches with a Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lane and No Through Movement (Sheet 2 of 3)

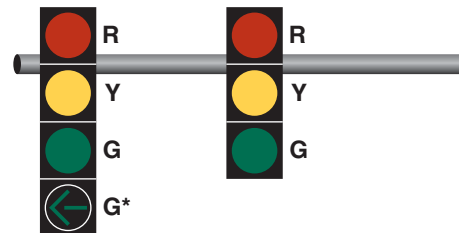
B - Pedestrian or vehicular conflict with one turn movement



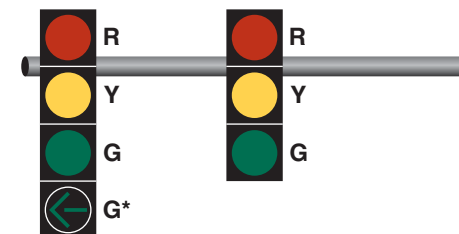
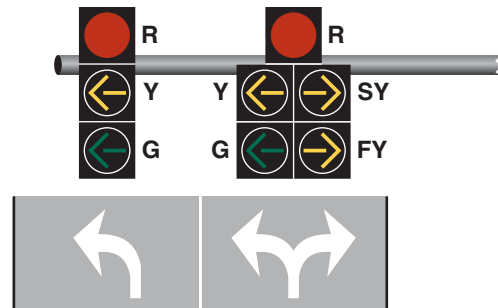
* Left-turn GREEN ARROW section shall be included if there is an opposing one-way approach and the signal phasing eliminates conflicts.

Notes:

1. A conflict with the right-turn movement is illustrated.
2. Horizontally-aligned signal faces may also be used.
3. Shared signal faces may also be 5 sections in a vertical straight line instead of a cluster.



OR



OR

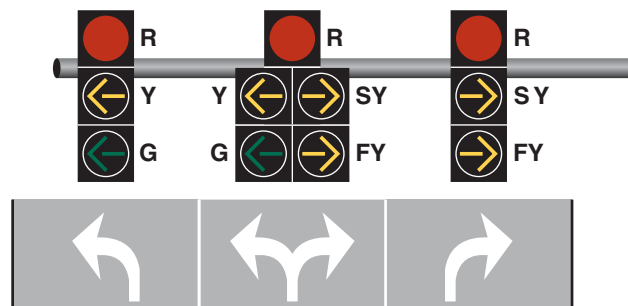
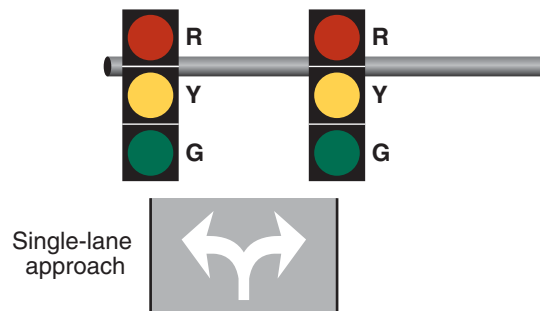


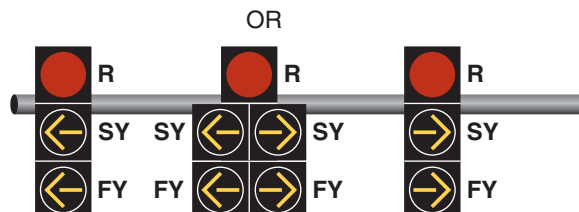
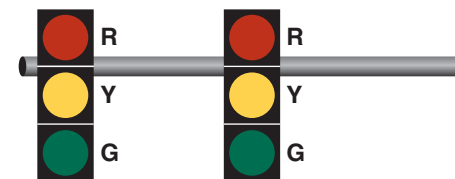
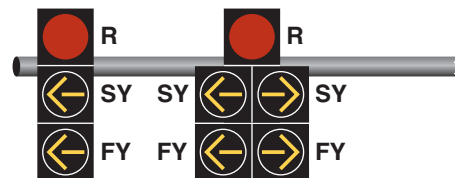
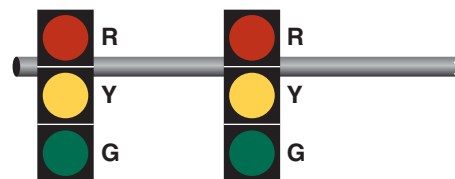
Figure 4D-20. Signal Indications for Approaches with a Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lane and No Through Movement (Sheet 3 of 3)

C - Pedestrian or vehicular conflicts with both turn movements



Notes:

1. Horizontally-aligned signal faces may also be used.
2. Shared signal faces may also be 5 sections in a vertical straight line instead of a cluster.



- 13 The duration of a yellow change interval or a red clearance interval may be different in different signal timing plans for the same controller unit.

Guidance:

- 14 *A yellow change interval should have a minimum duration of 3 seconds and a maximum duration of 6 seconds. The longer intervals should be reserved for use on approaches with higher speeds.*
- 15 *Except when clearing a one-lane, two-way facility (see Section 4H.02) or when clearing an exceptionally wide intersection, a red clearance interval should have a duration not exceeding 6 seconds.*

Standard:

- 16 **Except for warning beacons mounted on advance warning signs on the approach to a signalized location (see Section 2C.36), signal displays that are intended to provide a “pre-yellow warning” interval, such as flashing green signal indications, vehicular countdown displays, or other similar displays, shall not be used at a signalized location.**

Support:

- 17 The use of signal displays (other than warning beacons mounted on advance warning signs) that convey a “pre-yellow warning” have been found by research to increase the frequency of crashes.

Section 4D.27 Preemption and Priority Control of Traffic Control Signals

Option:

- 01 Traffic control signals may be designed and operated to respond to certain classes of approaching vehicles by altering the normal signal timing and phasing plan(s) during the approach and passage of those vehicles. The alternative plan(s) may be as simple as extending a currently displayed green interval or as complex as replacing the entire set of signal phases and timing.

Support:

- 02 Preemption control (see definition in Section 1A.13) is typically given to trains, boats, emergency vehicles, and light rail transit.
- 03 Examples of preemption control include the following:
- A. The prompt displaying of green signal indications at signalized locations ahead of fire vehicles, law enforcement vehicles, ambulances, and other official emergency vehicles;
 - B. A special sequence of signal phases and timing to expedite and/or provide additional clearance time for vehicles to clear the tracks prior to the arrival of rail traffic; and
 - C. A special sequence of signal phases to display a steady red indication to prohibit turning movements toward the tracks during the approach or passage of rail traffic.
- 04 Priority control (see definition in Section 1A.13) is typically given to certain non-emergency vehicles such as light-rail transit vehicles operating in a mixed-use alignment and buses.

- 05 Examples of priority control include the following:
- A. The displaying of early or extended green signal indications at an intersection to assist public transit vehicles in remaining on schedule, and
 - B. Special phasing to assist public transit vehicles in entering the travel stream ahead of the platoon of traffic.
- 06 Some types or classes of vehicles supersede others when a traffic control signal responds to more than one type or class. In general, a vehicle that is more difficult to control supersedes a vehicle that is easier to control.

Option:

- 07 Preemption or priority control of traffic control signals may also be a means of assigning priority right-of-way to specified classes of vehicles at certain non-intersection locations such as on approaches to one-lane bridges and tunnels, movable bridges, highway maintenance and construction activities, metered freeway entrance ramps, and transit operations.

Standard:

- 08 **During the transition into preemption control:**
- A. **The yellow change interval, and any red clearance interval that follows, shall not be shortened or omitted.**
 - B. **The shortening or omission of any pedestrian walk interval and/or pedestrian change interval shall be permitted.**
 - C. **The return to the previous green signal indication shall be permitted following a steady yellow signal indication in the same signal face, omitting the red clearance interval, if any.**

- 09 **During preemption control and during the transition out of preemption control:**
- A. The shortening or omission of any yellow change interval, and of any red clearance interval that follows, shall not be permitted.
 - B. A signal indication sequence from a steady yellow signal indication to a green signal indication shall not be permitted.
- 10 **During priority control and during the transition into or out of priority control:**
- A. The shortening or omission of any yellow change interval, and of any red clearance interval that follows, shall not be permitted.
 - B. The shortening of any pedestrian walk interval below that time described in Section 4E.06 shall not be permitted.
 - C. The omission of a pedestrian walk interval and its associated change interval shall not be permitted unless the associated vehicular phase is also omitted or the pedestrian phase is exclusive.
 - D. The shortening or omission of any pedestrian change interval shall not be permitted.
 - E. A signal indication sequence from a steady yellow signal indication to a green signal indication shall not be permitted.

Guidance:

- 11 *Except for traffic control signals interconnected with light rail transit systems, traffic control signals with railroad preemption or coordinated with flashing-light signal systems should be provided with a back-up power supply.*
- 12 *When a traffic control signal that is returning to a steady mode from a dark mode (typically upon restoration from a power failure) receives a preemption or priority request, care should be exercised to minimize the possibility of vehicles or pedestrians being misdirected into a conflict with the vehicle making the request.*

Option:

- 13 During the change from a dark mode to a steady mode under a preemption or priority request, the display of signal indications that could misdirect road users may be prevented by one or more of the following methods:
- A. Having the traffic control signal remain in the dark mode,
 - B. Having the traffic control signal remain in the flashing mode,
 - C. Altering the flashing mode,
 - D. Executing the normal start-up routine before responding, or
 - E. Responding directly to initial or dwell period.

Guidance:

- 14 *If a traffic control signal is installed near or within a grade crossing or if a grade crossing with active traffic control devices is within or near a signalized highway intersection, Chapter 8C should be consulted.*
- 15 *Traffic control signals operating under preemption control or under priority control should be operated in a manner designed to keep traffic moving.*
- 16 *Traffic control signals that are designed to respond under preemption or priority control to more than one type or class of vehicle should be designed to respond in the relative order of importance or difficulty in stopping the type or class of vehicle. The order of priority should be: train, boat, heavy vehicle (fire vehicle, emergency medical service), light vehicle (law enforcement), light rail transit, rubber-tired transit.*

Option:

- 17 A distinctive indication may be provided at the intersection to show that an emergency vehicle has been given control of the traffic control signal (see Section 11-106 of the “Uniform Vehicle Code”). In order to assist in the understanding of the control of the traffic signal, a common distinctive indication may be used where drivers from different agencies travel through the same intersection when responding to emergencies.
- 18 If engineering judgment indicates that light rail transit signal indications would reduce road user confusion that might otherwise occur if standard traffic signal indications were used to control these movements, light rail transit signal indications complying with Section 8C.11 and as illustrated in Figure 8C-3 may be used for preemption or priority control of the following exclusive movements at signalized intersections:
- A. Public transit buses in “queue jumper” lanes, and
 - B. Bus rapid transit in semi-exclusive or mixed-use alignments.

Section 4D.28 Flashing Operation of Traffic Control Signals – General

Standard:

- 01 The light source of a flashing signal indication shall be flashed continuously at a rate of not less than 50 or more than 60 times per minute.
- 02 The displayed period of each flash shall be a minimum of 1/2 and a maximum of 2/3 of the total flash cycle.
- 03 Flashing signal indications shall comply with the requirements of other Sections of this Manual regarding visibility-limiting or positioning of conflicting signal indications, except that flashing yellow signal indications for through traffic shall not be required to be visibility-limited or positioned to minimize visual conflict for road users in separately controlled turn lanes.
- 04 Each traffic control signal shall be provided with an independent flasher mechanism that operates in compliance with this Section.
- 05 The flashing operation shall not be terminated by removal or turn off of the controller unit or of the conflict monitor (malfunction management unit) or both.
- 06 A manual switch, a conflict monitor (malfunction management unit) circuit, and, if appropriate, automatic means shall be provided to initiate the flashing mode.

Option:

- 07 Based on engineering study or engineering judgment, traffic control signals may be operated in the flashing mode on a scheduled basis during one or more periods of the day rather than operated continuously in the steady (stop-and-go) mode.

Support:

- 08 Sections 4E.06 and 4E.09 contain information regarding the operation of pedestrian signal heads and accessible pedestrian signal detector pushbutton locator tones, respectively, during flashing operation.

Section 4D.29 Flashing Operation – Transition Into Flashing Mode

Standard:

- 01 The transition from steady (stop-and-go) mode to flashing mode, if initiated by a conflict monitor (malfunction management unit) or by a manual switch, shall be permitted to be made at any time.
- 02 Programmed changes from steady (stop-and-go) mode to flashing mode shall be made under either of the following circumstances:
 - A. At the end of the common major-street red interval (such as just prior to the start of the green in both directions on the major street), or
 - B. Directly from a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication to a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication, or from a GREEN ARROW signal indication to a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication, or from a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication (see Sections 4D.17 to 4D.24) to a flashing YELLOW ARROW signal indication in a different signal section.
- 03 During programmed changes into flashing mode, no green signal indication or flashing yellow signal indication shall be terminated and immediately followed by a steady red or flashing red signal indication without first displaying the steady yellow signal indication.

Section 4D.30 Flashing Operation – Signal Indications During Flashing Mode

Guidance:

- 01 When a traffic control signal is operated in the flashing mode, a flashing yellow signal indication should be used for the major street and a flashing red signal indication should be used for the other approaches unless flashing red signal indications are used on all approaches.

Standard:

- 02 When a traffic control signal is operated in the flashing mode, all of the green signal indications at the signalized location shall be dark (non-illuminated) and shall not be displayed in either a steady or flashing manner, except for single-section GREEN ARROW signal indications as provided elsewhere in this Section.
- 03 Flashing yellow signal indications shall be used on more than one approach to a signalized location only if those approaches do not conflict with each other.
- 04 Except as provided in Paragraph 5, when a traffic control signal is operated in the flashing mode, one and only one signal indication in every signal face at the signalized location shall be flashed.

Option:

- 05 If a signal face has two identical CIRCULAR RED or RED ARROW signal indications (see Section 4D.08), both of those identical signal indications may be flashed simultaneously.

Standard:

- 06 No steady indications, other than a single-section signal face consisting of a continuously-displayed GREEN ARROW signal indication that is used alone to indicate a continuous movement in the steady (stop-and-go) mode, shall be displayed at the signalized location during the flashing mode. A single-section GREEN ARROW signal indication shall remain continuously-displayed when the traffic control signal is operated in the flashing mode.
- 07 If a signal face includes both circular and arrow signal indications of the color that is to be flashed, only the circular signal indication shall be flashed.
- 08 All signal faces that are flashed on an approach shall flash the same color, either yellow or red, except that separate turn signal faces (see Sections 4D.17 and 4D.21) shall be permitted to flash a RED ARROW signal indication when the adjacent through movement signal indications are flashed yellow. Shared signal faces (see Sections 4D.17 and 4D.21) for turn movements shall not be permitted to flash a CIRCULAR RED signal indication when the adjacent through movement signal indications are flashed yellow.
- 09 The appropriate RED ARROW or YELLOW ARROW signal indication shall be flashed when a signal face consists entirely of arrow indications. A signal face that consists entirely of arrow indications and that provides a protected only turn movement during the steady (stop-and-go) mode or that provides a flashing yellow arrow or flashing red arrow signal indication for a permissive turn movement during the steady (stop-and-go) mode shall be permitted to flash the YELLOW ARROW signal indication during the flashing mode if the adjacent through movement signal indications are flashed yellow and if it is intended that a permissive turn movement not requiring a full stop by each turning vehicle be provided during the flashing mode.

Section 4D.31 Flashing Operation – Transition Out of Flashing Mode**Standard:**

- 01 All changes from flashing mode to steady (stop-and-go) mode shall be made under one of the following procedures:
- A. Yellow-red flashing mode: Changes from flashing mode to steady (stop-and-go) mode shall be made at the beginning of the major-street green interval (when a green signal indication is displayed to through traffic in both directions on the major street), or if there is no common major-street green interval, at the beginning of the green interval for the major traffic movement on the major street.
 - B. Red-red flashing mode: Changes from flashing mode to steady (stop-and-go) mode shall be made by changing the flashing red indications to steady red indications followed by appropriate green indications to begin the steady mode cycle. These green indications shall be the beginning of the major-street green interval (when a green signal indication is displayed to through traffic in both directions on the major street) or if there is no common major-street green interval, at the beginning of the green interval for the major traffic movement on the major street.

Guidance:

- 02 The steady red clearance interval provided during the change from red-red flashing mode to steady (stop-and-go) mode should have a duration of 6 seconds.
- 03 When changing from the yellow-red flashing mode to steady (stop-and-go) mode, if there is no common major-street green interval, the provision of a steady red clearance interval for the other approaches before changing from a flashing yellow or a flashing red signal indication to a green signal indication on the major approach should be considered.

Standard:

- 04 During programmed changes out of flashing mode, no flashing yellow signal indication shall be terminated and immediately followed by a steady red or flashing red signal indication without first displaying the steady yellow signal indication.

Option:

- 05 Because special midblock signals that rest in flashing circular yellow in the position normally occupied by the green signal indication do not have a green signal indication in the signal face, these signals may go directly from flashing circular yellow (in the position normally occupied by the green signal indication) to steady yellow without going first to a green signal indication.

Section 4D.32 Temporary and Portable Traffic Control Signals**Support:**

- 01 A temporary traffic control signal is generally installed using methods that minimize the costs of installation, relocation, and/or removal. Typical temporary traffic control signals are for specific purposes, such as for one-lane, two-way facilities in temporary traffic control zones (see Chapter 4H), for a haul-road intersection, or for access to a site that will have a permanent access point developed at another location in the near future.

Standard:

- 02 **Advance signing shall be used when employing a temporary traffic control signal.**
- 03 **A temporary traffic control signal shall:**
- A. **Meet the physical display and operational requirements of a conventional traffic control signal.**
 - B. **Be removed when no longer needed.**
 - C. **Be placed in the flashing mode when not being used if it will be operated in the steady mode within 5 working days; otherwise, it shall be removed.**
 - D. **Be placed in the flashing mode during periods when it is not desirable to operate the signal, or the signal heads shall be covered, turned, or taken down to indicate that the signal is not in operation.**

Guidance:

- 04 *A temporary traffic control signal should be used only if engineering judgment indicates that installing the signal will improve the overall safety and/or operation of the location.*
- 05 *The use of temporary traffic control signals by a work crew on a regular basis in their work area should be subject to the approval of the jurisdiction having authority over the roadway.*
- 06 *A temporary traffic control signal should not operate longer than 30 days unless associated with a longer-term temporary traffic control zone project.*
- 07 *For use of temporary traffic control signals in temporary traffic control zones, reference should be made to Section 6F.84.*

Section 4D.33 Lateral Offset of Signal Supports and Cabinets*Guidance:*

- 01 *The following items should be considered when placing signal supports and cabinets:*
- A. *Reference should be made to the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) “Roadside Design Guide” (see Section 1A.11) and to the “Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)” (see Section 1A.11).*
 - B. *Signal supports should be placed as far as practical from the edge of the traveled way without adversely affecting the visibility of the signal indications.*
 - C. *Where supports cannot be located based on the recommended AASHTO clearances, consideration should be given to the use of appropriate safety devices.*
 - D. *No part of a concrete base for a signal support should extend more than 4 inches above the ground level at any point. This limitation does not apply to the concrete base for a rigid support.*
 - E. *In order to minimize hindrance to the passage of persons with physical disabilities, a signal support or controller cabinet should not obstruct the sidewalk, or access from the sidewalk to the crosswalk.*
 - F. *Controller cabinets should be located as far as practical from the edge of the roadway.*
 - G. *On medians, the minimum clearances provided in Items A through E for signal supports should be obtained if practical.*

Section 4D.34 Use of Signs at Signalized Locations*Support:*

- 01 *Traffic signal signs are sometimes used at highway traffic signal locations to instruct or guide pedestrians, bicyclists, or motorists. Among the signs typically used at or on the approaches to signalized locations are movement prohibition signs (see Section 2B.18), lane control signs (see Sections 2B.19 to 2B.22), pedestrian crossing signs (see Section 2B.51), pedestrian actuation signs (see Section 2B.52), traffic signal signs (see Sections 2B.53 and 2C.48), Signal Ahead warning signs (see Section 2C.36), Street Name signs (see Section 2D.43), and Advance Street Name signs (see Section 2D.44).*

Guidance:

- 02 *Regulatory, warning, and guide signs should be used at traffic control signal locations as provided in Part 2 and as specifically provided elsewhere in Part 4.*
- 03 *Traffic signal signs should be located adjacent to the signal face to which they apply.*

Support:

- 04 *Section 2B.19 contains information regarding the use of overhead lane control signs on signalized approaches where lane drops, multiple-lane turns involving shared through-and-turn lanes, or other lane-use regulations that would be unexpected by unfamiliar road users are present.*

Standard:

- 05 If used, illuminated traffic signal signs shall be designed and mounted in such a manner as to avoid glare and reflections that seriously detract from the signal indications. Traffic control signal faces shall be given dominant position and brightness to maximize their priority in the overall display.
- 06 The minimum vertical clearance and horizontal offset of the total assembly of traffic signal signs (see Section 2B.53) shall comply with the provisions of Sections 4D.15 and 4D.16.
- 07 STOP signs shall not be used in conjunction with any traffic control signal operation, except in either of the following cases:
- A. If the signal indication for an approach is a flashing red at all times, or
 - B. If a minor street or driveway is located within or adjacent to the area controlled by the traffic control signal, but does not require separate traffic signal control because an extremely low potential for conflict exists.

Section 4D.35 Use of Pavement Markings at Signalized Locations**Support:**

- 01 Pavement markings (see Part 3) that clearly communicate the operational plan of an intersection to road users play an important role in the effective operation of traffic control signals. By designating the number of lanes, the use of each lane, the length of additional lanes on the approach to an intersection, and the proper stopping points, the engineer can design the signal phasing and timing to best match the goals of the operational plan.

Guidance:

- 02 *Pavement markings should be used at traffic control signal locations as provided in Part 3. If the road surface will not retain pavement markings, signs should be installed to provide the needed road user information.*

CHAPTER 4E. PEDESTRIAN CONTROL FEATURES

Section 4E.01 Pedestrian Signal Heads

Support:

- 01 Pedestrian signal heads provide special types of traffic signal indications exclusively intended for controlling pedestrian traffic. These signal indications consist of the illuminated symbols of a WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) and an UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK).

Guidance:

- 02 *Engineering judgment should determine the need for separate pedestrian signal heads (see Section 4D.03) and accessible pedestrian signals (see Section 4E.09).*

Support:

- 03 Chapter 4F contains information regarding the use of pedestrian hybrid beacons and Chapter 4N contains information regarding the use of In-Roadway Warning Lights at unsignalized marked crosswalks.

Section 4E.02 Meaning of Pedestrian Signal Head Indications

Standard:

- 01 Pedestrian signal head indications shall have the following meanings:
- A. A steady WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication means that a pedestrian facing the signal indication is permitted to start to cross the roadway in the direction of the signal indication, possibly in conflict with turning vehicles. The pedestrian shall yield the right-of-way to vehicles lawfully within the intersection at the time that the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication is first shown.
 - B. A flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication means that a pedestrian shall not start to cross the roadway in the direction of the signal indication, but that any pedestrian who has already started to cross on a steady WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication shall proceed to the far side of the traveled way of the street or highway, unless otherwise directed by a traffic control device to proceed only to the median of a divided highway or only to some other island or pedestrian refuge area.
 - C. A steady UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication means that a pedestrian shall not enter the roadway in the direction of the signal indication.
 - D. A flashing WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication has no meaning and shall not be used.

Section 4E.03 Application of Pedestrian Signal Heads

Standard:

- 01 Pedestrian signal heads shall be used in conjunction with vehicular traffic control signals under any of the following conditions:
- A. If a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study and meets either Warrant 4, Pedestrian Volume or Warrant 5, School Crossing (see Chapter 4C);
 - B. If an exclusive signal phase is provided or made available for pedestrian movements in one or more directions, with all conflicting vehicular movements being stopped;
 - C. At an established school crossing at any signalized location; or
 - D. Where engineering judgment determines that multi-phase signal indications (as with split-phase timing) would tend to confuse or cause conflicts with pedestrians using a crosswalk guided only by vehicular signal indications.

Guidance:

- 02 *Pedestrian signal heads should be used under any of the following conditions:*
- A. *If it is necessary to assist pedestrians in deciding when to begin crossing the roadway in the chosen direction or if engineering judgment determines that pedestrian signal heads are justified to minimize vehicle-pedestrian conflicts;*
 - B. *If pedestrians are permitted to cross a portion of a street, such as to or from a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait, during a particular interval but are not permitted to cross the remainder of the street during any part of the same interval; and/or*
 - C. *If no vehicular signal indications are visible to pedestrians, or if the vehicular signal indications that are visible to pedestrians starting a crossing provide insufficient guidance for them to decide when to begin crossing the roadway in the chosen direction, such as on one-way streets, at T-intersections, or at multi-phase signal operations.*

Option:

- 03 Pedestrian signal heads may be used under other conditions based on engineering judgment.

Section 4E.04 Size, Design, and Illumination of Pedestrian Signal Head Indications

Standard:

- 01 All new pedestrian signal head indications shall be displayed within a rectangular background and shall consist of symbolized messages (see Figure 4E-1), except that existing pedestrian signal head indications with lettered or outline style symbol messages shall be permitted to be retained for the remainder of their useful service life. The symbol designs that are set forth in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11) shall be used. Each pedestrian signal head indication shall be independently displayed and emit a single color.

- 02 If a two-section pedestrian signal head is used, the UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal section shall be mounted directly above the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal section. If a one-section pedestrian signal head is used, the symbols shall be either overlaid upon each other or arranged side-by-side with the UPRAISED HAND symbol to the left of the WALKING PERSON symbol, and a light source that can display each symbol independently shall be used.

- 03 The WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication shall be white, conforming to the publication entitled “Pedestrian Traffic Control Signal Indications” (see Section 1A.11), with all except the symbol obscured by an opaque material.

- 04 The UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication shall be Portland orange, conforming to the publication entitled “Pedestrian Traffic Control Signal Indications” (see Section 1A.11), with all except the symbol obscured by an opaque material.

- 05 When not illuminated, the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) and UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) symbols shall not be readily visible to pedestrians at the far end of the crosswalk that the pedestrian signal head indications control.

- 06 For pedestrian signal head indications, the symbols shall be at least 6 inches high.

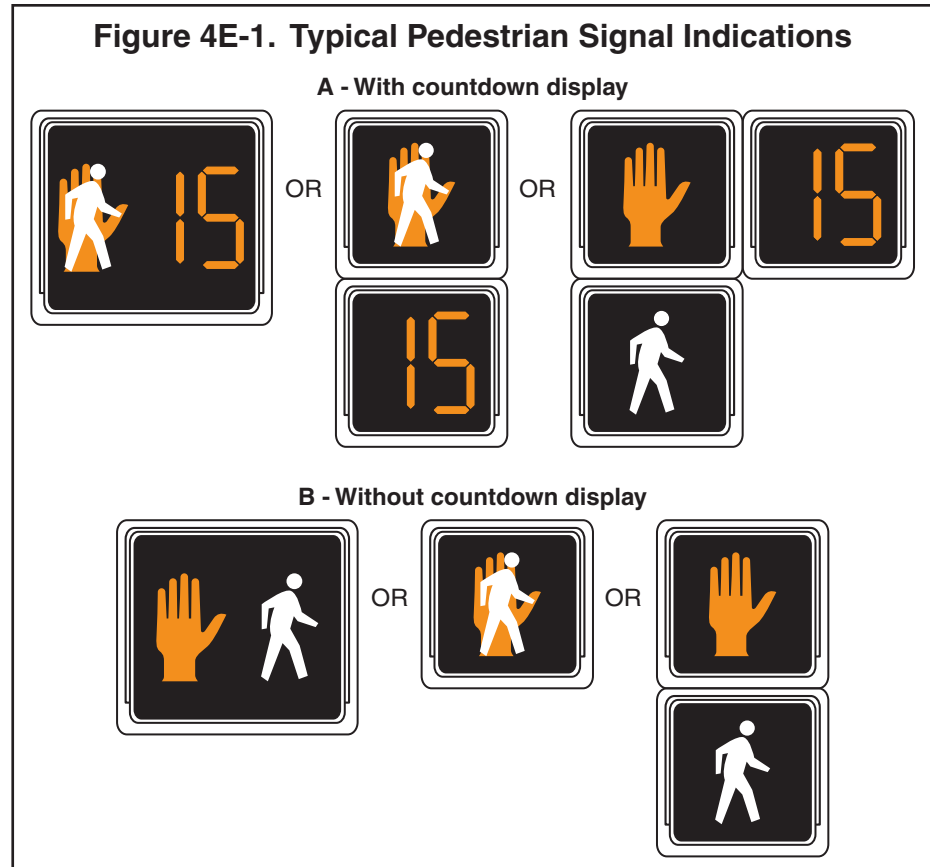
- 07 The light source of a flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication shall be flashed continuously at a rate of not less than 50 or more than 60 times per minute. The displayed period of each flash shall be a minimum of 1/2 and a maximum of 2/3 of the total flash cycle.

Guidance:

- 08 Pedestrian signal head indications should be conspicuous and recognizable to pedestrians at all distances from the beginning of the controlled crosswalk to a point 10 feet from the end of the controlled crosswalk during both day and night.

- 09 For crosswalks where the pedestrian enters the crosswalk more than 100 feet from the pedestrian signal head indications, the symbols should be at least 9 inches high.

- 10 If the pedestrian signal indication is so bright that it causes excessive glare in nighttime conditions, some form of automatic dimming should be used to reduce the brilliance of the signal indication.



Option:

- 11 An animated eyes symbol may be added to a pedestrian signal head in order to prompt pedestrians to look for vehicles in the intersection during the time that the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication is displayed.

Standard:

- 12 If used, the animated eyes symbol shall consist of an outline of a pair of white steadily-illuminated eyes with white eyeballs that scan from side to side at a rate of approximately once per second. The animated eyes symbol shall be at least 12 inches wide with each eye having a width of at least 5 inches and a height of at least 2.5 inches. The animated eyes symbol shall be illuminated at the start of the walk interval and shall terminate at the end of the walk interval.

Section 4E.05 Location and Height of Pedestrian Signal Heads

Standard:

- 01 Pedestrian signal heads shall be mounted with the bottom of the signal housing including brackets not less than 7 feet or more than 10 feet above sidewalk level, and shall be positioned and adjusted to provide maximum visibility at the beginning of the controlled crosswalk.
- 02 If pedestrian signal heads are mounted on the same support as vehicular signal heads, there shall be a physical separation between them.

Section 4E.06 Pedestrian Intervals and Signal Phases

Standard:

- 01 At intersections equipped with pedestrian signal heads, the pedestrian signal indications shall be displayed except when the vehicular traffic control signal is being operated in the flashing mode. At those times, the pedestrian signal indications shall not be displayed.
- 02 When the pedestrian signal heads associated with a crosswalk are displaying either a steady WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) or a flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication, a steady or a flashing red signal indication shall be shown to any conflicting vehicular movement that is approaching the intersection or midblock location perpendicular or nearly perpendicular to the crosswalk.
- 03 When pedestrian signal heads are used, a WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication shall be displayed only when pedestrians are permitted to leave the curb or shoulder.
- 04 A pedestrian change interval consisting of a flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication shall begin immediately following the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication. Following the pedestrian change interval, a buffer interval consisting of a steady UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication shall be displayed for at least 3 seconds prior to the release of any conflicting vehicular movement. The sum of the time of the pedestrian change interval and the buffer interval shall not be less than the calculated pedestrian clearance time (see Paragraphs 7 through 16). The buffer interval shall not begin later than the beginning of the red clearance interval, if used.

Option:

- 05 During the yellow change interval, the UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DON'T WALK) signal indication may be displayed as either a flashing indication, a steady indication, or a flashing indication for an initial portion of the yellow change interval and a steady indication for the remainder of the interval.

Support:

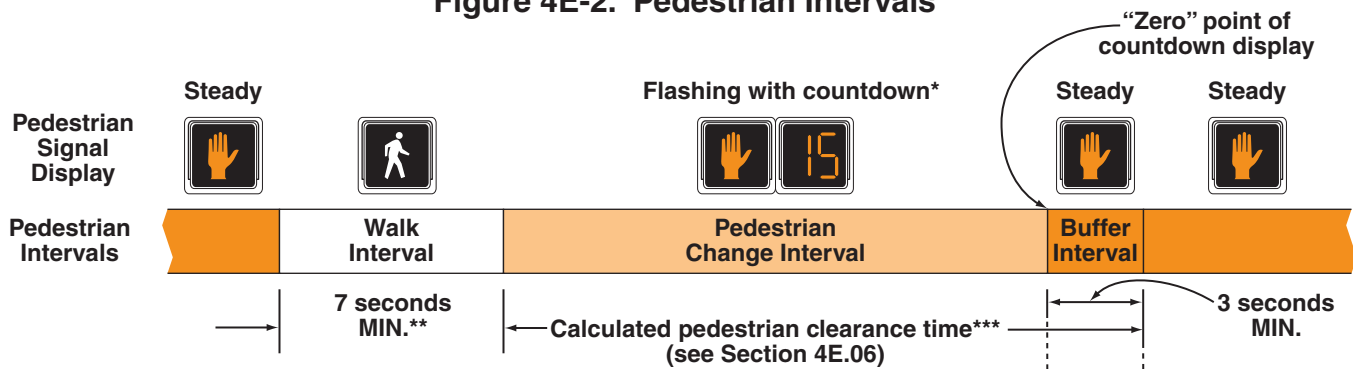
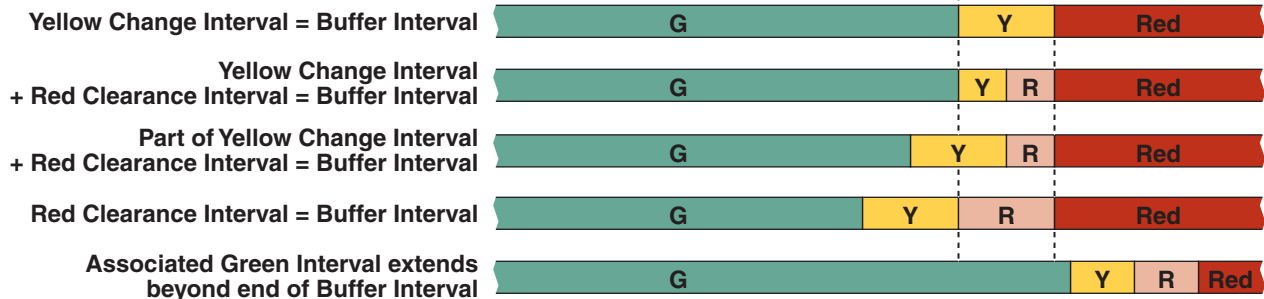
- 06 Figure 4E-2 illustrates the pedestrian intervals and their possible relationships with associated vehicular signal phase intervals.

Guidance:

- 07 Except as provided in Paragraph 8, the pedestrian clearance time should be sufficient to allow a pedestrian crossing in the crosswalk who left the curb or shoulder at the end of the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication to travel at a walking speed of 3.5 feet per second to at least the far side of the traveled way or to a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait.

Option:

- 08 A walking speed of up to 4 feet per second may be used to evaluate the sufficiency of the pedestrian clearance time at locations where an extended pushbutton press function has been installed to provide slower pedestrians an opportunity to request and receive a longer pedestrian clearance time. Passive pedestrian detection may also be used to automatically adjust the pedestrian clearance time based on the pedestrian's actual walking speed or actual clearance of the crosswalk.

Figure 4E-2. Pedestrian Intervals**Relationship to associated vehicular phase intervals:****Legend**

* The countdown display is optional for Pedestrian Change Intervals of 7 seconds or less.

** The Walk Interval may be reduced under some conditions (see Section 4E.06).

*** The Buffer Interval, which shall always be provided and displayed, may be used to help satisfy the calculated pedestrian clearance time, or may begin after the calculated pedestrian clearance time has ended.

G = Green Interval

Y = Yellow Change Interval (of at least 3 seconds)

R = Red Clearance Interval

Red = Red because conflicting traffic has been released

- 09 The additional time provided by an extended pushbutton press to satisfy pedestrian clearance time needs may be added to either the walk interval or the pedestrian change interval.

Guidance:

- 10 Where pedestrians who walk slower than 3.5 feet per second, or pedestrians who use wheelchairs, routinely use the crosswalk, a walking speed of less than 3.5 feet per second should be considered in determining the pedestrian clearance time.

- 11 Except as provided in Paragraph 12, the walk interval should be at least 7 seconds in length so that pedestrians will have adequate opportunity to leave the curb or shoulder before the pedestrian clearance time begins.

Option:

- 12 If pedestrian volumes and characteristics do not require a 7-second walk interval, walk intervals as short as 4 seconds may be used.

Support:

- 13 The walk interval is intended for pedestrians to start their crossing. The pedestrian clearance time is intended to allow pedestrians who started crossing during the walk interval to complete their crossing. Longer walk intervals are often used when the duration of the vehicular green phase associated with the pedestrian crossing is long enough to allow it.

Guidance:

- 14 The total of the walk interval and pedestrian clearance time should be sufficient to allow a pedestrian crossing in the crosswalk who left the pedestrian detector (or, if no pedestrian detector is present, a location 6 feet from the face of the curb or from the edge of the pavement) at the beginning of the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication to travel at a walking speed of 3 feet per second to the far side of the traveled way being crossed or to the median if a two-stage pedestrian crossing sequence is used. Any additional time that is required to satisfy the conditions of this paragraph should be added to the walk interval.

Option:

- 15 On a street with a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait, a pedestrian clearance time that allows the pedestrian to cross only from the curb or shoulder to the median may be provided.

Standard:

- 16 **Where the pedestrian clearance time is sufficient only for crossing from the curb or shoulder to a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait, median-mounted pedestrian signals (with pedestrian detectors if actuated operation is used) shall be provided (see Sections 4E.08 and 4E.09) and signing such as the R10-3d sign (see Section 2B.52) shall be provided to notify pedestrians to cross only to the median to await the next WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication.**

Guidance:

- 17 *Where median-mounted pedestrian signals and detectors are provided, the use of accessible pedestrian signals (see Sections 4E.09 through 4E.13) should be considered.*

Option:

- 18 During the transition into preemption, the walk interval and the pedestrian change interval may be shortened or omitted as described in Section 4D.27.

- 19 At intersections with high pedestrian volumes and high conflicting turning vehicle volumes, a brief leading pedestrian interval, during which an advance WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) indication is displayed for the crosswalk while red indications continue to be displayed to parallel through and/or turning traffic, may be used to reduce conflicts between pedestrians and turning vehicles.

Guidance:

- 20 *If a leading pedestrian interval is used, the use of accessible pedestrian signals (see Sections 4E.09 through 4E.13) should be considered.*

Support:

- 21 If a leading pedestrian interval is used without accessible features, pedestrians who are visually impaired can be expected to begin crossing at the onset of the vehicular movement when drivers are not expecting them to begin crossing.

Guidance:

- 22 *If a leading pedestrian interval is used, it should be at least 3 seconds in duration and should be timed to allow pedestrians to cross at least one lane of traffic or, in the case of a large corner radius, to travel far enough for pedestrians to establish their position ahead of the turning traffic before the turning traffic is released.*

- 23 *If a leading pedestrian interval is used, consideration should be given to prohibiting turns across the crosswalk during the leading pedestrian interval.*

Support:

- 24 At intersections with pedestrian volumes that are so high that drivers have difficulty finding an opportunity to turn across the crosswalk, the duration of the green interval for a parallel concurrent vehicular movement is sometimes intentionally set to extend beyond the pedestrian clearance time to provide turning drivers additional green time to make their turns while the pedestrian signal head is displaying a steady UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication after pedestrians have had time to complete their crossings.

Section 4E.07 Countdown Pedestrian Signals

Standard:

- 01 **All pedestrian signal heads used at crosswalks where the pedestrian change interval is more than 7 seconds shall include a pedestrian change interval countdown display in order to inform pedestrians of the number of seconds remaining in the pedestrian change interval.**

Option:

- 02 Pedestrian signal heads used at crosswalks where the pedestrian change interval is 7 seconds or less may include a pedestrian change interval countdown display in order to inform pedestrians of the number of seconds remaining in the pedestrian change interval.

Standard:

- 03 **Where countdown pedestrian signals are used, the countdown shall always be displayed simultaneously with the flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication displayed for that crosswalk.**

- 04 **Countdown pedestrian signals shall consist of Portland orange numbers that are at least 6 inches in height on a black opaque background. The countdown pedestrian signal shall be located immediately adjacent to the associated UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) pedestrian signal head indication (see Figure 4E-1).**

05 **The display of the number of remaining seconds shall begin only at the beginning of the pedestrian change interval (flashing UPRAISED HAND). After the countdown displays zero, the display shall remain dark until the beginning of the next countdown.**

06 **The countdown pedestrian signal shall display the number of seconds remaining until the termination of the pedestrian change interval (flashing UPRAISED HAND). Countdown displays shall not be used during the walk interval or during the red clearance interval of a concurrent vehicular phase.**

Guidance:

07 *If used with a pedestrian signal head that does not have a concurrent vehicular phase, the pedestrian change interval (flashing UPRAISED HAND) should be set to be approximately 4 seconds less than the required pedestrian clearance time (see Section 4E.06) and an additional clearance interval (during which a steady UPRAISED HAND is displayed) should be provided prior to the start of the conflicting vehicular phase.*

08 *For crosswalks where the pedestrian enters the crosswalk more than 100 feet from the countdown pedestrian signal display, the numbers should be at least 9 inches in height.*

09 *Because some technology includes the countdown pedestrian signal logic in a separate timing device that is independent of the timing in the traffic signal controller, care should be exercised by the engineer when timing changes are made to pedestrian change intervals.*

10 *If the pedestrian change interval is interrupted or shortened as a part of a transition into a preemption sequence (see Section 4E.06), the countdown pedestrian signal display should be discontinued and go dark immediately upon activation of the preemption transition.*

Section 4E.08 Pedestrian Detectors

Option:

01 Pedestrian detectors may be pushbuttons or passive detection devices.

Support:

02 Passive detection devices register the presence of a pedestrian in a position indicative of a desire to cross, without requiring the pedestrian to push a button. Some passive detection devices are capable of tracking the progress of a pedestrian as the pedestrian crosses the roadway for the purpose of extending or shortening the duration of certain pedestrian timing intervals.

03 The provisions in this Section place pedestrian pushbuttons within easy reach of pedestrians who are intending to cross each crosswalk and make it obvious which pushbutton is associated with each crosswalk. These provisions also position pushbutton poles in optimal locations for installation of accessible pedestrian signals (see Sections 4E.09 through 4E.13). Information regarding reach ranges can be found in the “Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)” (see Section 1A.11).

Guidance:

04 *If pedestrian pushbuttons are used, they should be capable of easy activation and conveniently located near each end of the crosswalks. Except as provided in Paragraphs 5 and 6, pedestrian pushbuttons should be located to meet all of the following criteria (see Figure 4E-3):*

- A. Unobstructed and adjacent to a level all-weather surface to provide access from a wheelchair;*
- B. Where there is an all-weather surface, a wheelchair accessible route from the pushbutton to the ramp;*
- C. Between the edge of the crosswalk line (extended) farthest from the center of the intersection and the side of a curb ramp (if present), but not greater than 5 feet from said crosswalk line;*
- D. Between 1.5 and 6 feet from the edge of the curb, shoulder, or pavement;*
- E. With the face of the pushbutton parallel to the crosswalk to be used; and*
- F. At a mounting height of approximately 3.5 feet, but no more than 4 feet, above the sidewalk.*

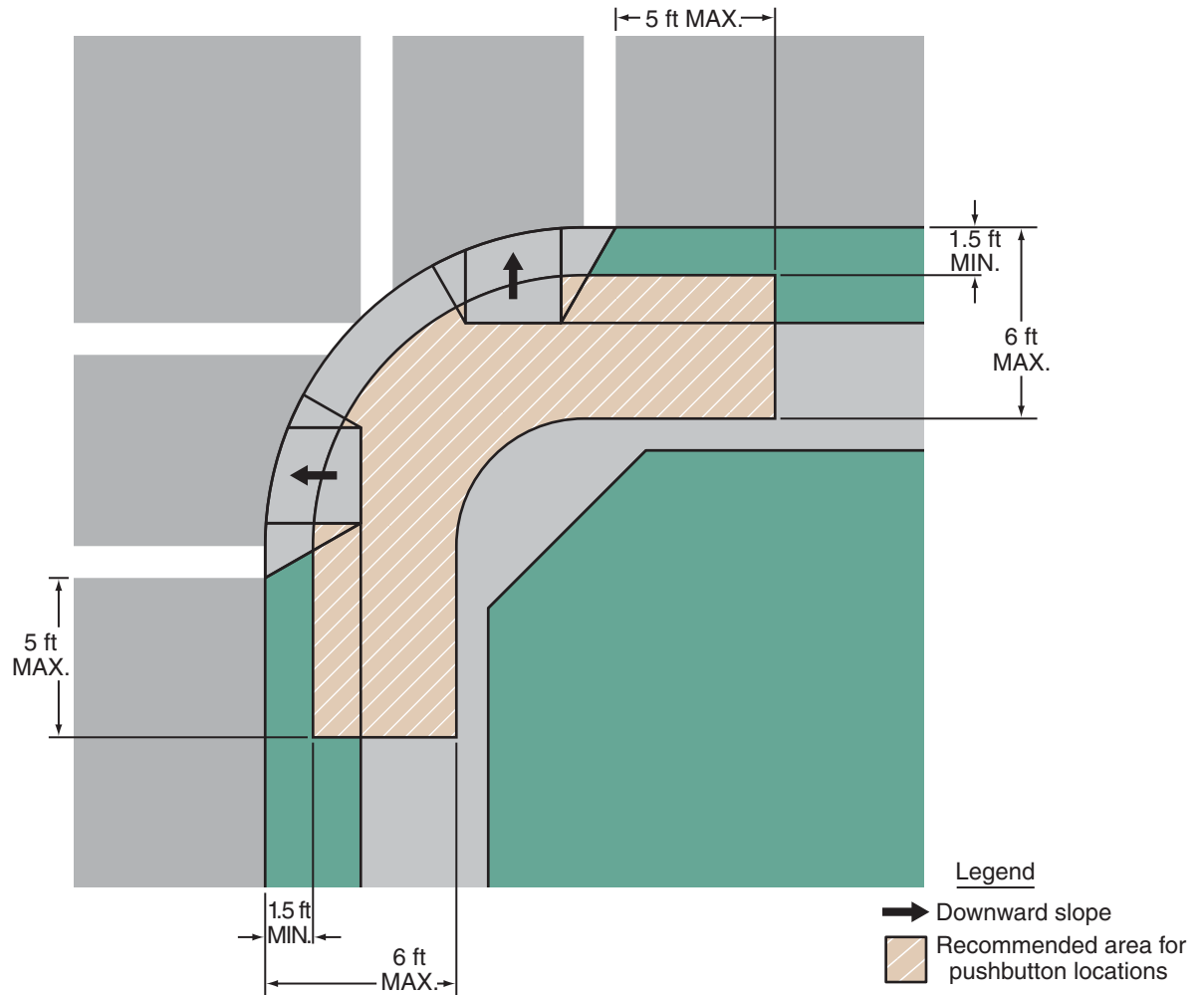
05 *Where there are physical constraints that make it impractical to place the pedestrian pushbutton adjacent to a level all-weather surface, the surface should be as level as feasible.*

06 *Where there are physical constraints that make it impractical to place the pedestrian pushbutton between 1.5 and 6 feet from the edge of the curb, shoulder, or pavement, it should not be farther than 10 feet from the edge of curb, shoulder, or pavement.*

07 *Except as provided in Paragraph 8, where two pedestrian pushbuttons are provided on the same corner of a signalized location, the pushbuttons should be separated by a distance of at least 10 feet.*

Option:

08 *Where there are physical constraints on a particular corner that make it impractical to provide the 10-foot separation between the two pedestrian pushbuttons, the pushbuttons may be placed closer together or on the same pole.*

Figure 4E-3. Pushbutton Location Area**Notes:**

1. Where there are constraints that make it impractical to place the pedestrian pushbutton between 1.5 feet and 6 feet from the edge of the curb, shoulder, or pavement, it should not be further than 10 feet from the edge of curb, shoulder, or pavement.
2. Two pedestrian pushbuttons on a corner should be separated by 10 feet.
3. This figure is not drawn to scale.
4. Figure 4E-4 shows typical pushbutton locations.

Support:

09 Figure 4E-4 shows typical pedestrian pushbutton locations for a variety of situations.

Standard:

10 **Signs (see Section 2B.52) shall be mounted adjacent to or integral with pedestrian pushbuttons, explaining their purpose and use.**

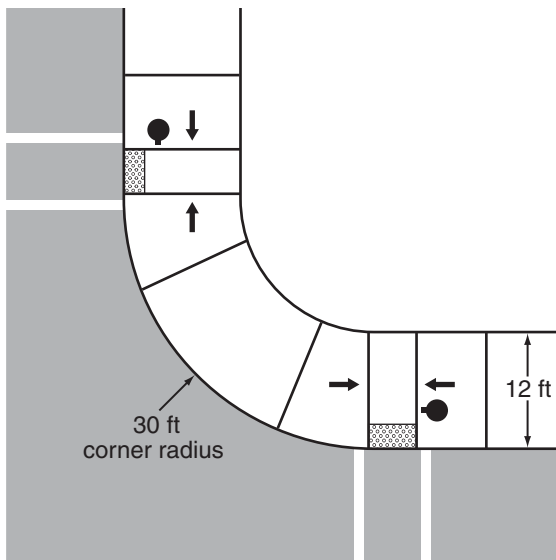
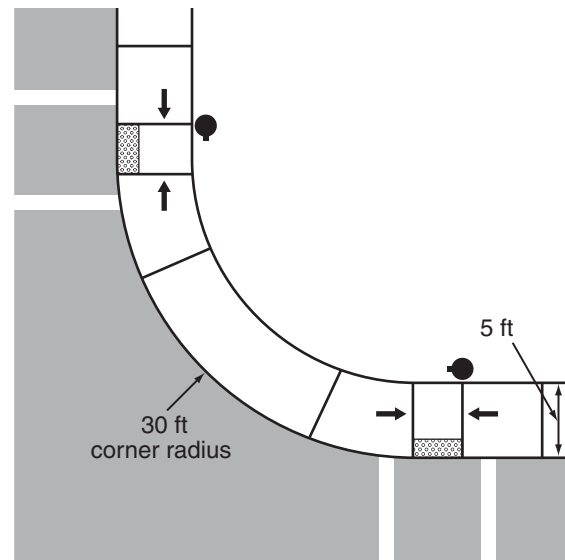
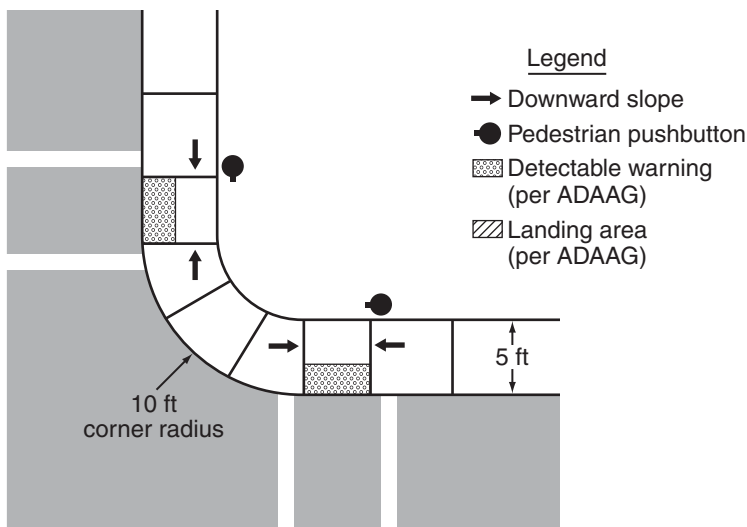
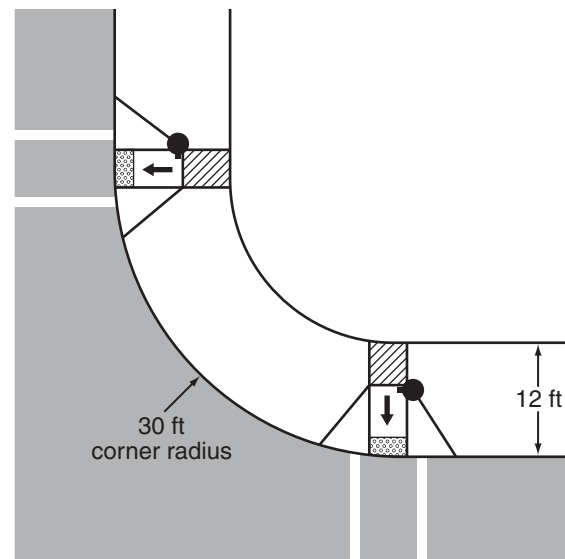
Option:

11 At certain locations, a supplemental sign in a more visible location may be used to call attention to the pedestrian pushbutton.

Standard:

12 **The positioning of pedestrian pushbuttons and the legends on the pedestrian pushbutton signs shall clearly indicate which crosswalk signal is actuated by each pedestrian pushbutton.**

13 **If the pedestrian clearance time is sufficient only to cross from the curb or shoulder to a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait and the signals are pedestrian actuated, an additional pedestrian detector shall be provided in the median.**

Figure 4E-4. Typical Pushbutton Locations (Sheet 1 of 2)**A - Parallel ramps with wide sidewalk****B - Parallel ramps with narrow sidewalk****C - Parallel ramps with narrow sidewalk and tight corner radius****D - Perpendicular ramps with crosswalks far apart****Notes:**

1. This figure is not drawn to scale.
2. These drawings are intended to describe the typical locations for pedestrian pushbutton installations. They are not intended to be a guide for the design of curb cut ramps.
3. Figure 4E-3 shows the recommended area for pushbutton locations.

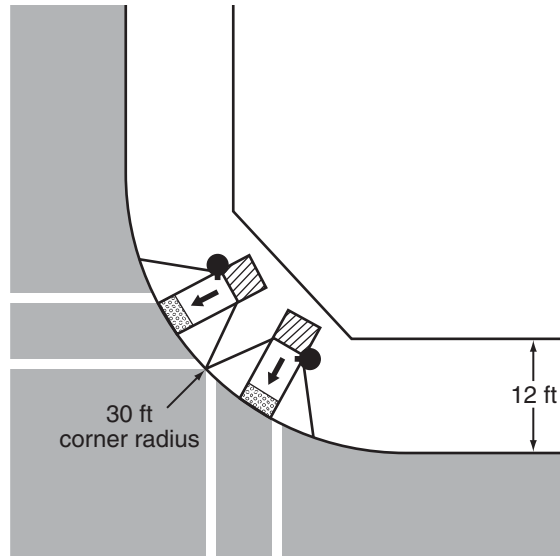
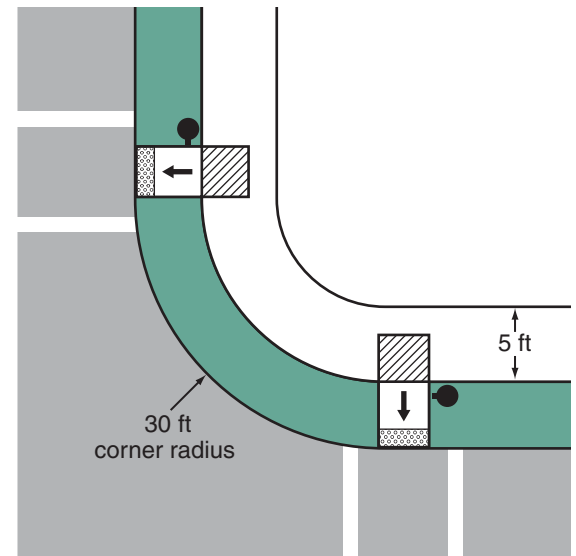
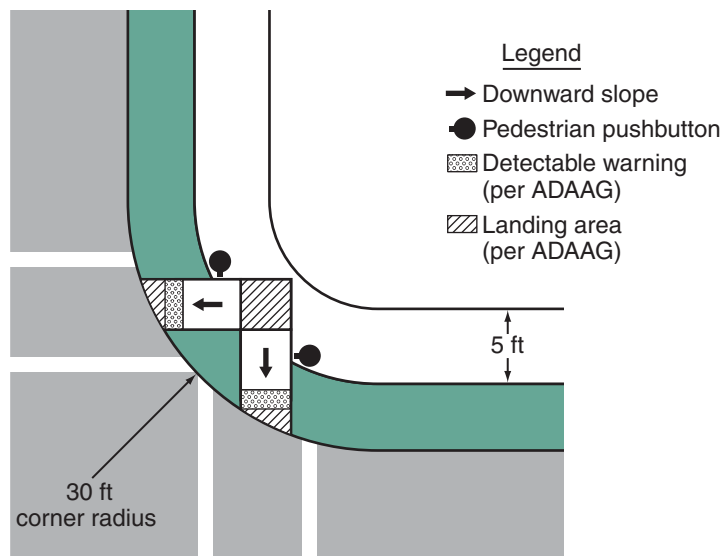
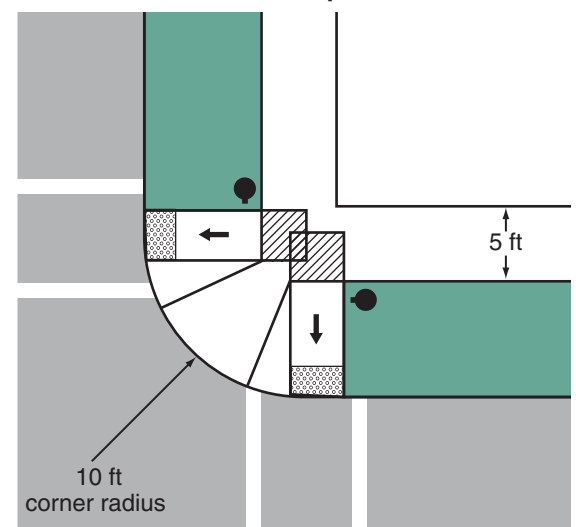
Guidance:

14 The use of additional pedestrian detectors on islands or medians where a pedestrian might become stranded should be considered.

15 If used, special purpose pushbuttons (to be operated only by authorized persons) should include a housing capable of being locked to prevent access by the general public and do not need an instructional sign.

Standard:

16 If used, a pilot light or other means of indication installed with a pedestrian pushbutton shall not be illuminated until actuation. Once it is actuated, the pilot light shall remain illuminated until the pedestrian's green or WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication is displayed.

Figure 4E-4. Typical Pushbutton Locations (Sheet 2 of 2)**E - Perpendicular ramps with crosswalks close together****F - Perpendicular ramps with sidewalk set back from road with crosswalks far apart****G - Perpendicular ramps with sidewalk set back from road with crosswalks close together****H - Perpendicular ramps with sidewalk set back from road with continuous sidewalk between ramps****Notes:**

1. This figure is not drawn to scale.
2. These drawings are intended to describe the typical locations for pedestrian pushbutton installations. They are not intended to be a guide for the design of curb cut ramps.
3. Figure 4E-3 shows the recommended area for pushbutton locations.

17 **If a pilot light is used at an accessible pedestrian signal location (see Sections 4E.09 through 4E.13), each actuation shall be accompanied by the speech message “wait.”**

Option:

18 At signalized locations with a demonstrated need and subject to equipment capabilities, pedestrians with special needs may be provided with additional crossing time by means of an extended pushbutton press.

Standard:

19 **If additional crossing time is provided by means of an extended pushbutton press, a PUSH BUTTON FOR 2 SECONDS FOR EXTRA CROSSING TIME (R10-32P) plaque (see Figure 2B-26) shall be mounted adjacent to or integral with the pedestrian pushbutton.**

Section 4E.09 Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – General

Support:

- 01 Accessible pedestrian signals and detectors provide information in non-visual formats (such as audible tones, speech messages, and/or vibrating surfaces).
- 02 The primary technique that pedestrians who have visual disabilities use to cross streets at signalized locations is to initiate their crossing when they hear the traffic in front of them stop and the traffic alongside them begin to move, which often corresponds to the onset of the green interval. The existing environment is often not sufficient to provide the information that pedestrians who have visual disabilities need to cross a roadway at a signalized location.

Guidance:

- 03 *If a particular signalized location presents difficulties for pedestrians who have visual disabilities to cross the roadway, an engineering study should be conducted that considers the needs of pedestrians in general, as well as the information needs of pedestrians with visual disabilities. The engineering study should consider the following factors:*
- A. *Potential demand for accessible pedestrian signals;*
 - B. *A request for accessible pedestrian signals;*
 - C. *Traffic volumes during times when pedestrians might be present, including periods of low traffic volumes or high turn-on-red volumes;*
 - D. *The complexity of traffic signal phasing (such as split phases, protected turn phases, leading pedestrian intervals, and exclusive pedestrian phases); and*
 - E. *The complexity of intersection geometry.*

Support:

- 04 The factors that make crossing at a signalized location difficult for pedestrians who have visual disabilities include: increasingly quiet cars, right turn on red (which masks the beginning of the through phase), continuous right-turn movements, complex signal operations, traffic circles, and wide streets. Furthermore, low traffic volumes might make it difficult for pedestrians who have visual disabilities to discern signal phase changes.
- 05 Local organizations, providing support services to pedestrians who have visual and/or hearing disabilities, can often act as important advisors to the traffic engineer when consideration is being given to the installation of devices to assist such pedestrians. Additionally, orientation and mobility specialists or similar staff also might be able to provide a wide range of advice. The U.S. Access Board (www.access-board.gov) provides technical assistance for making pedestrian signal information available to persons with visual disabilities (see Page i for the address for the U.S. Access Board).

Standard:

- 06 **When used, accessible pedestrian signals shall be used in combination with pedestrian signal timing. The information provided by an accessible pedestrian signal shall clearly indicate which pedestrian crossing is served by each device.**
- 07 **Under stop-and-go operation, accessible pedestrian signals shall not be limited in operation by the time of day or day of week.**

Option:

- 08 Accessible pedestrian signal detectors may be pushbuttons or passive detection devices.
- 09 At locations with pretimed traffic control signals or non-actuated approaches, pedestrian pushbuttons may be used to activate the accessible pedestrian signals.

Support:

- 10 Accessible pedestrian signals are typically integrated into the pedestrian detector (pushbutton), so the audible tones and/or messages come from the pushbutton housing. They have a pushbutton locator tone and tactile arrow, and can include audible beaconing and other special features.

Option:

- 11 The name of the street to be crossed may also be provided in accessible format, such as Braille or raised print. Tactile maps of crosswalks may also be provided.

Support:

- 12 Specifications regarding the use of Braille or raised print for traffic control devices can be found in the “Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)” (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

- 13 **At accessible pedestrian signal locations where pedestrian pushbuttons are used, each pushbutton shall activate both the walk interval and the accessible pedestrian signals.**

Section 4E.10 Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Location**Support:**

- 01 Accessible pedestrian signals that are located as close as possible to pedestrians waiting to cross the street provide the clearest and least ambiguous indication of which pedestrian crossing is served by a device.

Guidance:

- 02 *Pushbuttons for accessible pedestrian signals should be located in accordance with the provisions of Section 4E.08 and should be located as close as possible to the crosswalk line furthest from the center of the intersection and as close as possible to the curb ramp.*

Standard:

- 03 **If two accessible pedestrian pushbuttons are placed less than 10 feet apart or on the same pole, each accessible pedestrian pushbutton shall be provided with the following features (see Sections 4E.11 through 4E.13):**
- A. A pushbutton locator tone,
 - B. A tactile arrow,
 - C. A speech walk message for the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) indication, and
 - D. A speech pushbutton information message.
- 04 **If the pedestrian clearance time is sufficient only to cross from the curb or shoulder to a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait and accessible pedestrian detectors are used, an additional accessible pedestrian detector shall be provided in the median.**

Section 4E.11 Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Walk Indications**Support:**

- 01 Technology that provides different sounds for each non-concurrent signal phase has frequently been found to provide ambiguous information. Research indicates that a rapid tick tone for each crossing coming from accessible pedestrian signal devices on separated poles located close to each crosswalk provides unambiguous information to pedestrians who are blind or visually impaired. Vibrotactile indications provide information to pedestrians who are blind and deaf and are also used by pedestrians who are blind or who have low vision to confirm the walk signal in noisy situations.

Standard:

- 02 **Accessible pedestrian signals shall have both audible and vibrotactile walk indications.**
- 03 **Vibrotactile walk indications shall be provided by a tactile arrow on the pushbutton (see Section 4E.12) that vibrates during the walk interval.**
- 04 **Accessible pedestrian signals shall have an audible walk indication during the walk interval only. The audible walk indication shall be audible from the beginning of the associated crosswalk.**
- 05 **The accessible walk indication shall have the same duration as the pedestrian walk signal except when the pedestrian signal rests in walk.**

Guidance:

- 06 *If the pedestrian signal rests in walk, the accessible walk indication should be limited to the first 7 seconds of the walk interval. The accessible walk indication should be recalled by a button press during the walk interval provided that the crossing time remaining is greater than the pedestrian change interval.*

Standard:

- 07 **Where two accessible pedestrian signals are separated by a distance of at least 10 feet, the audible walk indication shall be a percussive tone. Where two accessible pedestrian signals on one corner are not separated by a distance of at least 10 feet, the audible walk indication shall be a speech walk message.**
- 08 **Audible tone walk indications shall repeat at eight to ten ticks per second. Audible tones used as walk indications shall consist of multiple frequencies with a dominant component at 880 Hz.**

Guidance:

- 09 *The volume of audible walk indications and pushbutton locator tones (see Section 4E.12) should be set to be a maximum of 5 dBA louder than ambient sound, except when audible beaconing is provided in response to an extended pushbutton press.*

Standard:

- 10 **Automatic volume adjustment in response to ambient traffic sound level shall be provided up to a maximum volume of 100 dBA.**

Guidance:

- 11 *The sound level of audible walk indications and pushbutton locator tones should be adjusted to be low enough to avoid misleading pedestrians who have visual disabilities when the following conditions exist:*
- A. *Where there is an island that allows unsignalized right turns across a crosswalk between the island and the sidewalk.*
 - B. *Where multi-leg approaches or complex signal phasing require more than two pedestrian phases, such that it might be unclear which crosswalk is served by each audible tone.*
 - C. *At intersections where a diagonal pedestrian crossing is allowed, or where one street receives a WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication simultaneously with another street.*

Option:

- 12 An alert tone, which is a very brief burst of high-frequency sound at the beginning of the audible walk indication that rapidly decays to the frequency of the walk tone, may be used to alert pedestrians to the beginning of the walk interval.

Support:

- 13 An alert tone can be particularly useful if the walk tone is not easily audible in some traffic conditions.
- 14 Speech walk messages communicate to pedestrians which street has the walk interval. Speech messages might be either directly audible or transmitted, requiring a personal receiver to hear the message. To be a useful system, the words and their meaning need to be correctly understood by all users in the context of the street environment where they are used. Because of this, tones are the preferred means of providing audible walk indications except where two accessible pedestrian signals on one corner are not separated by a distance of at least 10 feet.
- 15 If speech walk messages are used, pedestrians have to know the names of the streets that they are crossing in order for the speech walk messages to be unambiguous. In getting directions to travel to a new location, pedestrians with visual disabilities do not always get the name of each street to be crossed. Therefore, it is desirable to give users of accessible pedestrian signals the name of the street controlled by the pushbutton. This can be done by means of a speech pushbutton information message (see Section 4D.13) during the flashing or steady UPRaised HAND intervals, or by raised print and Braille labels on the pushbutton housing.
- 16 By combining the information from the pushbutton message or Braille label, the tactile arrow aligned in the direction of travel on the relevant crosswalk, and the speech walk message, pedestrians with visual disabilities are able to correctly respond to speech walk messages even if there are two pushbuttons on the same pole.

Standard:

- 17 **If speech walk messages are used to communicate the walk interval, they shall provide a clear message that the walk interval is in effect, as well as to which crossing it applies. Speech walk messages shall be used only at intersections where it is technically infeasible to install two accessible pedestrian signals at one corner separated by a distance of at least 10 feet.**
- 18 **Speech walk messages that are used at intersections having pedestrian phasing that is concurrent with vehicular phasing shall be patterned after the model: “Broadway. Walk sign is on to cross Broadway.”**
- 19 **Speech walk messages that are used at intersections having exclusive pedestrian phasing shall be patterned after the model: “Walk sign is on for all crossings.”**
- 20 **Speech walk messages shall not contain any additional information, except they shall include designations such as “Street” or “Avenue” where this information is necessary to avoid ambiguity at a particular location.**

Guidance:

- 21 *Speech walk messages should not state or imply a command to the pedestrian, such as “Cross Broadway now.” Speech walk messages should not tell pedestrians that it is “safe to cross,” because it is always the pedestrian’s responsibility to check actual traffic conditions.*

Standard:

- 22 **A speech walk message is not required at times when the walk interval is not timing, but, if provided:**
- A. **It shall begin with the term “wait.”**
 - B. **It need not be repeated for the entire time that the walk interval is not timing.**
- 23 **If a pilot light (see Section 4E.08) is used at an accessible pedestrian signal location, each actuation shall be accompanied by the speech message “wait.”**

Option:

- 24 Accessible pedestrian signals that provide speech walk messages may provide similar messages in languages other than English, if needed, except for the terms “walk sign” and “wait.”

Standard:

- 25 **Following the audible walk indication, accessible pedestrian signals shall revert to the pushbutton locator tone (see Section 4E.12) during the pedestrian change interval.**

Section 4E.12 Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Tactile Arrows and Locator Tones

Standard:

- 01 **To enable pedestrians who have visual disabilities to distinguish and locate the appropriate pushbutton at an accessible pedestrian signal location, pushbuttons shall clearly indicate by means of tactile arrows which crosswalk signal is actuated by each pushbutton. Tactile arrows shall be located on the pushbutton, have high visual contrast (light on dark or dark on light), and shall be aligned parallel to the direction of travel on the associated crosswalk.**

- 02 **An accessible pedestrian pushbutton shall incorporate a locator tone.**

Support:

- 03 A pushbutton locator tone is a repeating sound that informs approaching pedestrians that a pushbutton to actuate pedestrian timing or receive additional information exists, and that enables pedestrians with visual disabilities to locate the pushbutton.

Standard:

- 04 **Pushbutton locator tones shall have a duration of 0.15 seconds or less, and shall repeat at 1-second intervals.**

- 05 **Pushbutton locator tones shall be deactivated when the traffic control signal is operating in a flashing mode. This requirement shall not apply to traffic control signals or pedestrian hybrid beacons that are activated from a flashing or dark mode to a stop-and-go mode by pedestrian actuations.**

- 06 **Pushbutton locator tones shall be intensity responsive to ambient sound, and be audible 6 to 12 feet from the pushbutton, or to the building line, whichever is less.**

Support:

- 07 Section 4E.11 contains additional provisions regarding the volume and sound level of pushbutton locator tones.

Section 4E.13 Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Extended Pushbutton Press Features

Option:

- 01 Pedestrians may be provided with additional features such as increased crossing time, audible beaconing, or a speech pushbutton information message as a result of an extended pushbutton press.

Standard:

- 02 **If an extended pushbutton press is used to provide any additional feature(s), a pushbutton press of less than one second shall actuate only the pedestrian timing and any associated accessible walk indication, and a pushbutton press of one second or more shall actuate the pedestrian timing, any associated accessible walk indication, and any additional feature(s).**

- 03 **If additional crossing time is provided by means of an extended pushbutton press, a PUSH BUTTON FOR 2 SECONDS FOR EXTRA CROSSING TIME (R10-32P) plaque (see Figure 2B-26) shall be mounted adjacent to or integral with the pedestrian pushbutton.**

Support:

- 04 Audible beaconing is the use of an audible signal in such a way that pedestrians with visual disabilities can home in on the signal that is located on the far end of the crosswalk as they cross the street.

- 05 Not all crosswalks at an intersection need audible beaconing; audible beaconing can actually cause confusion if used at all crosswalks at some intersections. Audible beaconing is not appropriate at locations with channelized turns or split phasing, because of the possibility of confusion.

Guidance:

- 06 *Audible beaconing should only be considered following an engineering study at:*
- A. *Crosswalks longer than 70 feet, unless they are divided by a median that has another accessible pedestrian signal with a locator tone;*
 - B. *Crosswalks that are skewed;*
 - C. *Intersections with irregular geometry, such as more than four legs;*
 - D. *Crosswalks where audible beaconing is requested by an individual with visual disabilities; or*
 - E. *Other locations where a study indicates audible beaconing would be beneficial.*

Option:

- 07 Audible beaconing may be provided in several ways, any of which are initiated by an extended pushbutton press.

Standard:

- 08 **If audible beaconing is used, the volume of the pushbutton locator tone during the pedestrian change interval of the called pedestrian phase shall be increased and operated in one of the following ways:**
- A. The louder audible walk indication and louder locator tone comes from the far end of the crosswalk, as pedestrians cross the street,
 - B. The louder locator tone comes from both ends of the crosswalk, or
 - C. The louder locator tone comes from an additional speaker that is aimed at the center of the crosswalk and that is mounted on a pedestrian signal head.

Option:

- 09 Speech pushbutton information messages may provide intersection identification, as well as information about unusual intersection signalization and geometry, such as notification regarding exclusive pedestrian phasing, leading pedestrian intervals, split phasing, diagonal crosswalks, and medians or islands.

Standard:

- 10 **If speech pushbutton information messages are made available by actuating the accessible pedestrian signal detector, they shall only be actuated when the walk interval is not timing. They shall begin with the term “Wait,” followed by intersection identification information modeled after: “Wait to cross Broadway at Grand.” If information on intersection signalization or geometry is also given, it shall follow the intersection identification information.**

Guidance:

- 11 *Speech pushbutton information messages should not be used to provide landmark information or to inform pedestrians with visual disabilities about detours or temporary traffic control situations.*

Support:

- 12 Additional information on the structure and wording of speech pushbutton information messages is included in ITE’s “Electronic Toolbox for Making Intersections More Accessible for Pedestrians Who Are Blind or Visually Impaired,” which is available at ITE’s website (see Page i).

CHAPTER 4F. PEDESTRIAN HYBRID BEACONS

Section 4F.01 Application of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons

Support:

- 01 A pedestrian hybrid beacon is a special type of hybrid beacon used to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location to assist pedestrians in crossing a street or highway at a marked crosswalk.

Option:

- 02 A pedestrian hybrid beacon may be considered for installation to facilitate pedestrian crossings at a location that does not meet traffic signal warrants (see Chapter 4C), or at a location that meets traffic signal warrants under Sections 4C.05 and/or 4C.06 but a decision is made to not install a traffic control signal.

Standard:

- 03 **If used, pedestrian hybrid beacons shall be used in conjunction with signs and pavement markings to warn and control traffic at locations where pedestrians enter or cross a street or highway. A pedestrian hybrid beacon shall only be installed at a marked crosswalk.**

Guidance:

- 04 *If one of the signal warrants of Chapter 4C is met and a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study, and if a decision is made to install a traffic control signal, it should be installed based upon the provisions of Chapters 4D and 4E.*
- 05 *If a traffic control signal is not justified under the signal warrants of Chapter 4C and if gaps in traffic are not adequate to permit pedestrians to cross, or if the speed for vehicles approaching on the major street is too high to permit pedestrians to cross, or if pedestrian delay is excessive, the need for a pedestrian hybrid beacon should be considered on the basis of an engineering study that considers major-street volumes, speeds, widths, and gaps in conjunction with pedestrian volumes, walking speeds, and delay.*
- 06 *For a major street where the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed is 35 mph or less, the need for a pedestrian hybrid beacon should be considered if the engineering study finds that the plotted point representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding total of all pedestrians crossing the major street for 1 hour (any four consecutive 15-minute periods) of an average day falls above the applicable curve in Figure 4F-1 for the length of the crosswalk.*
- 07 *For a major street where the posted or statutory speed limit or the 85th-percentile speed exceeds 35 mph, the need for a pedestrian hybrid beacon should be considered if the engineering study finds that the plotted point representing the vehicles per hour on the major street (total of both approaches) and the corresponding total of all pedestrians crossing the major street for 1 hour (any four consecutive 15-minute periods) of an average day falls above the applicable curve in Figure 4F-2 for the length of the crosswalk.*
- 08 *For crosswalks that have lengths other than the four that are specifically shown in Figures 4F-1 and 4F-2, the values should be interpolated between the curves.*

Section 4F.02 Design of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons

Standard:

- 01 **Except as otherwise provided in this Section, a pedestrian hybrid beacon shall meet the provisions of Chapters 4D and 4E.**
- 02 **A pedestrian hybrid beacon face shall consist of three signal sections, with a CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication centered below two horizontally aligned CIRCULAR RED signal indications (see Figure 4F-3).**
- 03 **When an engineering study finds that installation of a pedestrian hybrid beacon is justified, then:**
- A. **At least two pedestrian hybrid beacon faces shall be installed for each approach of the major street,**
 - B. **A stop line shall be installed for each approach to the crosswalk,**
 - C. **A pedestrian signal head conforming to the provisions set forth in Chapter 4E shall be installed at each end of the marked crosswalk, and**
 - D. **The pedestrian hybrid beacon shall be pedestrian actuated.**

Guidance:

- 04 *When an engineering study finds that installation of a pedestrian hybrid beacon is justified, then:*
- A. *The pedestrian hybrid beacon should be installed at least 100 feet from side streets or driveways that are controlled by STOP or YIELD signs,*

Figure 4F-1. Guidelines for the Installation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons on Low-Speed Roadways

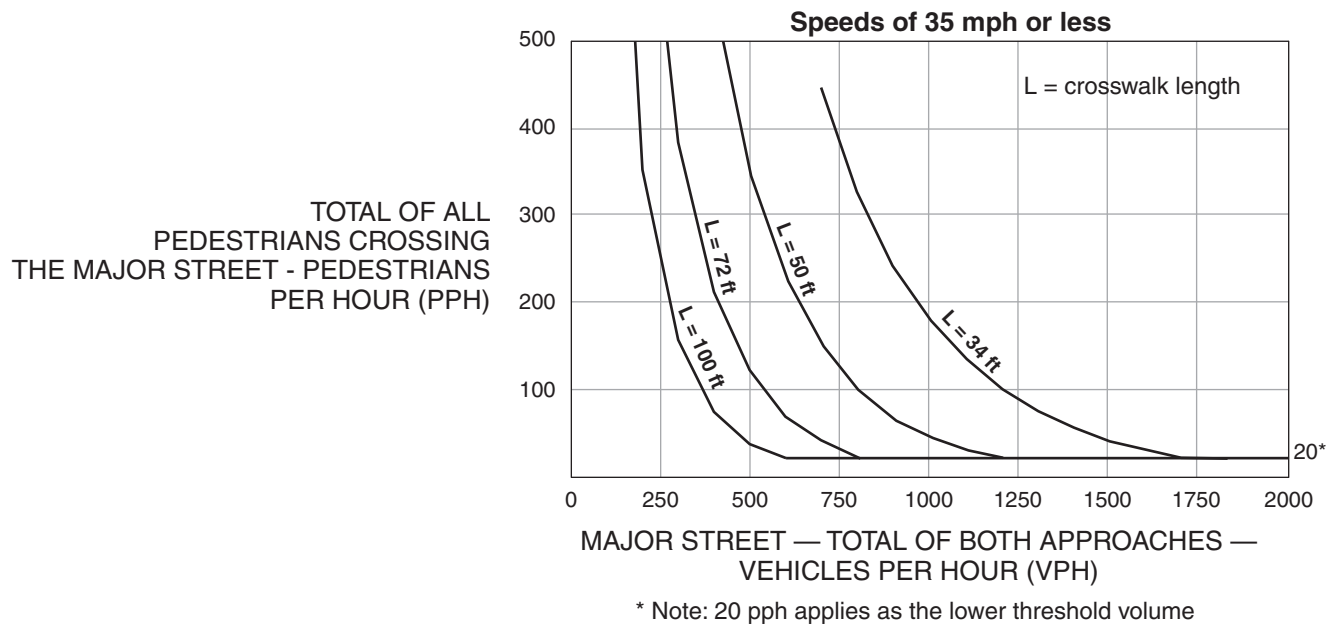


Figure 4F-2. Guidelines for the Installation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons on High-Speed Roadways

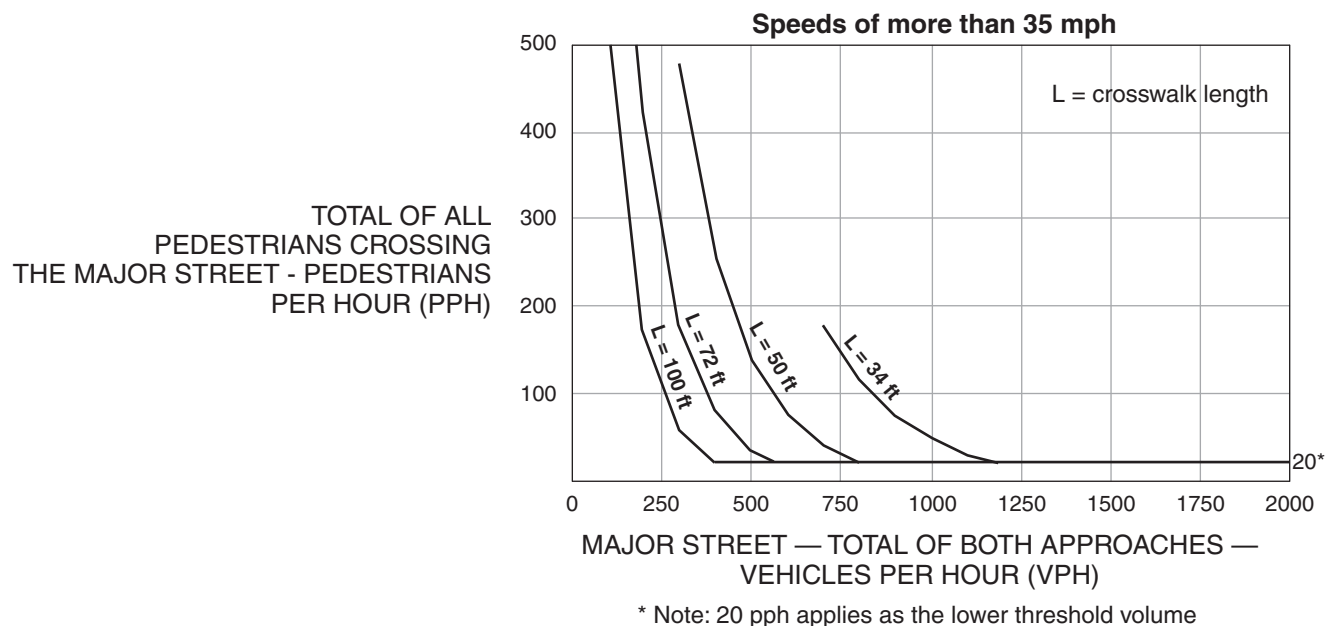
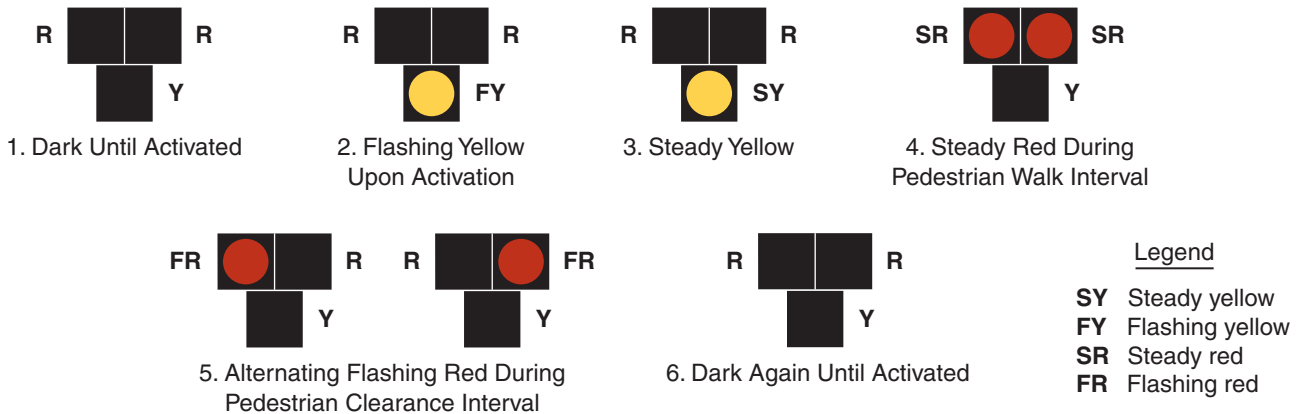


Figure 4F-3. Sequence for a Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon

B. Parking and other sight obstructions should be prohibited for at least 100 feet in advance of and at least 20 feet beyond the marked crosswalk, or site accommodations should be made through curb extensions or other techniques to provide adequate sight distance,

C. The installation should include suitable standard signs and pavement markings, and

D. If installed within a signal system, the pedestrian hybrid beacon should be coordinated.

05 On approaches having posted or statutory speed limits or 85th-percentile speeds in excess of 35 mph and on approaches having traffic or operating conditions that would tend to obscure visibility of roadside hybrid beacon face locations, both of the minimum of two pedestrian hybrid beacon faces should be installed over the roadway.

06 On multi-lane approaches having a posted or statutory speed limits or 85th-percentile speeds of 35 mph or less, either a pedestrian hybrid beacon face should be installed on each side of the approach (if a median of sufficient width exists) or at least one of the pedestrian hybrid beacon faces should be installed over the roadway.

07 A pedestrian hybrid beacon should comply with the signal face location provisions described in Sections 4D.11 through 4D.16.

Standard:

08 A CROSSWALK STOP ON RED (symbolic circular red) (R10-23) sign (see Section 2B.53) shall be mounted adjacent to a pedestrian hybrid beacon face on each major street approach. If an overhead pedestrian hybrid beacon face is provided, the sign shall be mounted adjacent to the overhead signal face. Option:

09 A Pedestrian (W11-2) warning sign (see Section 2C.50) with an AHEAD (W16-9P) supplemental plaque may be placed in advance of a pedestrian hybrid beacon. A warning beacon may be installed to supplement the W11-2 sign.

Guidance:

10 If a warning beacon supplements a W11-2 sign in advance of a pedestrian hybrid beacon, it should be programmed to flash only when the pedestrian hybrid beacon is not in the dark mode.

Standard:

11 If a warning beacon is installed to supplement the W11-2 sign, the design and location of the warning beacon shall comply with the provisions of Sections 4L.01 and 4L.03.

Section 4F.03 Operation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons

Standard:

01 Pedestrian hybrid beacon indications shall be dark (not illuminated) during periods between actuations.

02 Upon actuation by a pedestrian, a pedestrian hybrid beacon face shall display a flashing CIRCULAR yellow signal indication, followed by a steady CIRCULAR yellow signal indication, followed by both steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications during the pedestrian walk interval, followed by alternating flashing CIRCULAR RED signal indications during the pedestrian clearance interval (see Figure 4F-3). Upon termination of the pedestrian clearance interval, the pedestrian hybrid beacon faces shall revert to a dark (not illuminated) condition.

- 03 Except as provided in Paragraph 4, the pedestrian signal heads shall continue to display a steady UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication when the pedestrian hybrid beacon faces are either dark or displaying flashing or steady CIRCULAR yellow signal indications. The pedestrian signal heads shall display a WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication when the pedestrian hybrid beacon faces are displaying steady CIRCULAR RED signal indications. The pedestrian signal heads shall display a flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication when the pedestrian hybrid beacon faces are displaying alternating flashing CIRCULAR RED signal indications. Upon termination of the pedestrian clearance interval, the pedestrian signal heads shall revert to a steady UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication.

Option:

- 04 Where the pedestrian hybrid beacon is installed adjacent to a roundabout to facilitate crossings by pedestrians with visual disabilities and an engineering study determines that pedestrians without visual disabilities can be allowed to cross the roadway without actuating the pedestrian hybrid beacon, the pedestrian signal heads may be dark (not illuminated) when the pedestrian hybrid beacon faces are dark.

Guidance:

- 05 *The duration of the flashing yellow interval should be determined by engineering judgment.*

Standard:

- 06 **The duration of the steady yellow change interval shall be determined using engineering practices.**

Guidance:

- 07 *The steady yellow interval should have a minimum duration of 3 seconds and a maximum duration of 6 seconds (see Section 4D.26). The longer intervals should be reserved for use on approaches with higher speeds.*

CHAPTER 4G. TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS AND HYBRID BEACONS FOR EMERGENCY-VEHICLE ACCESS

Section 4G.01 Application of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals and Hybrid Beacons

Support:

- 01 An emergency-vehicle traffic control signal is a special traffic control signal that assigns the right-of-way to an authorized emergency vehicle.

Option:

- 02 An emergency-vehicle traffic control signal may be installed at a location that does not meet other traffic signal warrants such as at an intersection or other location to permit direct access from a building housing the emergency vehicle.
- 03 An emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon may be installed instead of an emergency-vehicle traffic control signal under conditions described in Section 4G.04.

Guidance:

- 04 *If a traffic control signal is not justified under the signal warrants of Chapter 4C and if gaps in traffic are not adequate to permit the timely entrance of emergency vehicles, or the stopping sight distance for vehicles approaching on the major street is insufficient for emergency vehicles, installing an emergency-vehicle traffic control signal should be considered. If one of the signal warrants of Chapter 4C is met and a traffic control signal is justified by an engineering study, and if a decision is made to install a traffic control signal, it should be installed based upon the provisions of Chapter 4D.*
- 05 *The sight distance determination should be based on the location of the visibility obstruction for the critical approach lane for each street or drive and the posted or statutory speed limit or 85th-percentile speed on the major street, whichever is higher.*

Section 4G.02 Design of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals

Standard:

- 01 Except as otherwise provided in this Section, an emergency-vehicle traffic control signal shall meet the requirements of this Manual.
- 02 An Emergency Vehicle (W11-8) sign (see Section 2C.49) with an EMERGENCY SIGNAL AHEAD (W11-12P) supplemental plaque shall be placed in advance of all emergency-vehicle traffic control signals. If a warning beacon is installed to supplement the W11-8 sign, the design and location of the beacon shall comply with the Standards of Sections 4L.01 and 4L.03.

Guidance:

- 03 *At least one of the two required signal faces for each approach on the major street should be located over the roadway.*
- 04 *The following size signal indications should be used for emergency-vehicle traffic control signals: 12-inch diameter for steady red and steady yellow circular signal indications and any arrow indications, and 8-inch diameter for green or flashing yellow circular signal indications.*

Standard:

- 05 An EMERGENCY SIGNAL (R10-13) sign shall be mounted adjacent to a signal face on each major street approach (see Section 2B.53). If an overhead signal face is provided, the EMERGENCY SIGNAL sign shall be mounted adjacent to the overhead signal face.

Option:

- 06 An approach that only serves emergency vehicles may be provided with only one signal face consisting of one or more signal sections.
- 07 Besides using an 8-inch diameter signal indication, other appropriate means to reduce the flashing yellow light output may be used.

Section 4G.03 Operation of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals

Standard:

- 01 Right-of-way for emergency vehicles at signalized locations operating in the steady (stop-and-go) mode shall be obtained as provided in Section 4D.27.
- 02 As a minimum, the signal indications, sequence, and manner of operation of an emergency-vehicle traffic control signal installed at a midblock location shall be as follows:

- A. The signal indication, between emergency-vehicle actuations, shall be either green or flashing yellow. If the flashing yellow signal indication is used instead of the green signal indication, it shall be displayed in the normal position of the green signal indication, while the steady red and steady yellow signal indications shall be displayed in their normal positions.
- B. When an emergency-vehicle actuation occurs, a steady yellow change interval followed by a steady red interval shall be displayed to traffic on the major street.
- C. A yellow change interval is not required following the green interval for the emergency-vehicle driveway.

03 Emergency-vehicle traffic control signals located at intersections shall either be operated in the flashing mode between emergency-vehicle actuations (see Sections 4D.28 and 4D.30) or be full-actuated or semi-actuated to accommodate normal vehicular and pedestrian traffic on the streets.

04 Warning beacons, if used with an emergency-vehicle traffic control signal, shall be flashed only:

- A. For an appropriate time in advance of and during the steady yellow change interval for the major street; and
- B. During the steady red interval for the major street.

Guidance:

05 The duration of the steady red interval for traffic on the major street should be determined by on-site test-run time studies, but should not exceed 1.5 times the time required for the emergency vehicle to clear the path of conflicting vehicles.

Option:

06 An emergency-vehicle traffic control signal sequence may be initiated manually from a local control point such as a fire station or law enforcement headquarters or from an emergency vehicle equipped for remote operation of the signal.

Section 4G.04 Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacons

Standard:

01 Emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons shall be used only in conjunction with signs to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location where emergency vehicles enter or cross a street or highway. Emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons shall be actuated only by authorized emergency or maintenance personnel.

Guidance:

02 Emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons should only be used when all of the following criteria are satisfied:

- A. The conditions justifying an emergency-vehicle traffic control signal (see Section 4G.01) are met; and
- B. An engineering study, considering the road width, approach speeds, and other pertinent factors, determines that emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons can be designed and located in compliance with the requirements contained in this Section and in Section 4L.01, such that they effectively warn and control traffic at the location; and
- C. The location is not at or within 100 feet from an intersection or driveway where the side road or driveway is controlled by a STOP or YIELD sign.

Standard:

03 Except as otherwise provided in this Section, an emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon shall meet the requirements of this Manual.

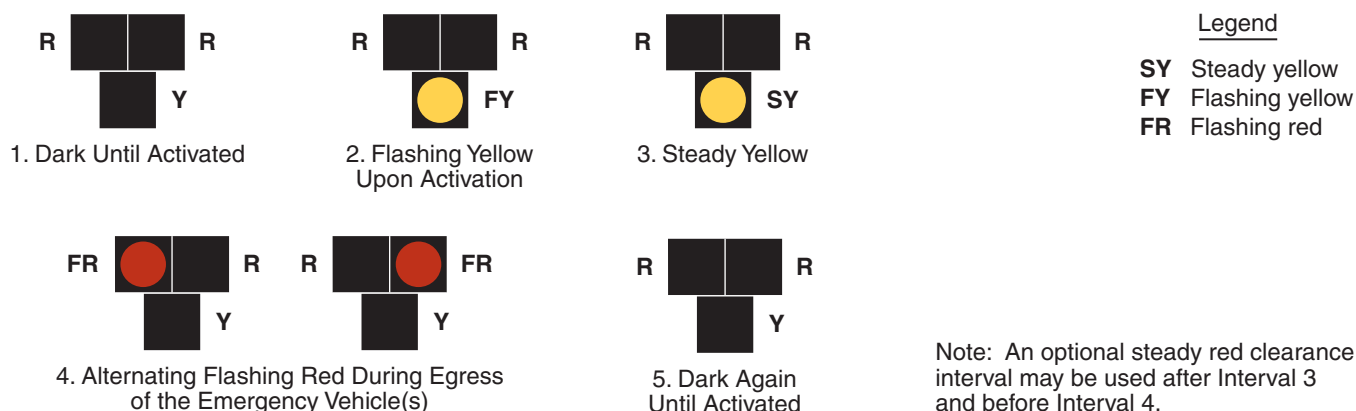
04 An emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon face shall consist of three signal sections, with a CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication centered below two horizontally aligned CIRCULAR RED signal indications (see Figure 4G-1).

05 Emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons shall be placed in a dark mode (no indications displayed) during periods between actuations.

06 Upon actuation by authorized emergency personnel, the emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon faces shall each display a flashing yellow signal indication, followed by a steady yellow change interval, prior to displaying two CIRCULAR RED signal indications in an alternating flashing array for a duration of time adequate for egress of the emergency vehicles. The alternating flashing red signal indications shall only be displayed when it is required that drivers on the major street stop and then proceed subject to the rules applicable after making a stop at a STOP sign. Upon termination of the flashing red signal indications, the emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons shall revert to a dark mode (no indications displayed) condition.

Guidance:

07 The duration of the flashing yellow interval should be determined by engineering judgment.

Figure 4G-1. Sequence for an Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacon**Standard:**

- 08 **The duration of the steady yellow change interval shall be determined using engineering practices.**

Guidance:

- 09 *The steady yellow change interval should have a minimum duration of 3 seconds and a maximum duration of 6 seconds (see Section 4D.26). The longer intervals should be reserved for use on approaches with higher speeds.*

Option:

- 10 A steady red clearance interval may be used after the steady yellow change interval.
- 11 Emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons may be equipped with a light or other display visible to the operator of the egressing emergency vehicle to provide confirmation that the beacons are operating.
- 12 Emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons may be supplemented with an advance warning sign, which may also be supplemented with a Warning Beacon (see Section 4L.03).

Guidance:

- 13 *If a Warning Beacon is used to supplement the advance warning sign, it should be programmed to flash only when the emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon is not in the dark mode.*

Standard:

- 14 **At least two emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon faces shall be installed for each approach of the major street and a stop line shall be installed for each approach of the major street.**

Guidance:

- 15 *On approaches having posted or statutory speed limits or 85th-percentile speeds in excess of 40 mph, and on approaches having traffic or operating conditions that would tend to obscure visibility of roadside beacon faces, both of the minimum of two emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon faces should be installed over the roadway.*
- 16 *On multi-lane approaches having posted or statutory speed limits or 85th-percentile speeds of 40 mph or less, either an emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon face should be installed on each side of the approach (if a median of sufficient width exists) or at least one of the emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon faces should be installed over the roadway.*
- 17 *An emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon should comply with the signal face location provisions described in Sections 4D.11 through 4D.16.*

Standard:

- 18 **Stop lines and EMERGENCY SIGNAL—STOP WHEN FLASHING RED (R10-14 or R10-14a) signs (see Section 2B.53) shall be used with emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons.**

Option:

- 19 If needed for extra emphasis, a STOP HERE ON FLASHING RED (R10-14b) sign (see Section 2B.53) may be installed with an emergency-vehicle hybrid beacon.

CHAPTER 4H. TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS FOR ONE-LANE, TWO-WAY FACILITIES

Section 4H.01 Application of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities

Support:

- 01 A traffic control signal at a narrow bridge, tunnel, or roadway section is a special signal that assigns the right-of-way for vehicles passing over a bridge or through a tunnel or roadway section that is not of sufficient width for two opposing vehicles to pass.
- 02 Temporary traffic control signals (see Sections 4D.32 and 6F.84) are the most frequent application of one-lane, two-way facilities.

Guidance:

- 03 *Sight distance across or through the one-lane, two-way facility should be considered as well as the approach speed and sight distance approaching the facility when determining whether traffic control signals should be installed.*

Option:

- 04 At a narrow bridge, tunnel, or roadway section where a traffic control signal is not justified under the conditions of Chapter 4C, a traffic control signal may be used if gaps in opposing traffic do not permit the flow of traffic through the one-lane section of roadway.

Section 4H.02 Design of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities

Standard:

- 01 The provisions of Chapter 4D shall apply to traffic control signals for one-lane, two-way facilities, except that:
- A. Durations of red clearance intervals shall be adequate to clear the one-lane section of conflicting vehicles.
 - B. Adequate means, such as interconnection, shall be provided to prevent conflicting signal indications, such as green and green, at opposite ends of the section.

Section 4H.03 Operation of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities

Standard:

- 01 Traffic control signals at one-lane, two-way facilities shall operate in a manner consistent with traffic requirements.
- 02 When in the flashing mode, the signal indications shall flash red.

Guidance:

- 03 *Adequate time should be provided to allow traffic to clear the narrow facility before opposing traffic is allowed to move. Engineering judgment should be used to determine the proper timing for the signal.*

CHAPTER 4I. TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS FOR FREEWAY ENTRANCE RAMPS

Section 4I.01 Application of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals

Support:

- 01 Ramp control signals are traffic control signals that control the flow of traffic entering the freeway facility. This is often referred to as “ramp metering.”
- 02 Freeway entrance ramp control signals are sometimes used if controlling traffic entering the freeway could reduce the total expected delay to traffic in the freeway corridor, including freeway ramps and local streets.

Guidance:

- 03 *The installation of ramp control signals should be preceded by an engineering study of the physical and traffic conditions on the highway facilities likely to be affected. The study should include the ramps and ramp connections and the surface streets that would be affected by the ramp control, as well as the freeway section concerned.*

Support:

- 04 Information on conditions that might justify freeway entrance ramp control signals, factors to be evaluated in traffic engineering studies for ramp control signals, design of ramp control signals, and operation of ramp control signals can be found in the FHWA’s “Ramp Management and Control Handbook” (see Section 1A.11).

Section 4I.02 Design of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals

Standard:

- 01 **Ramp control signals shall meet all of the standard design specifications for traffic control signals, except as otherwise provided in this Section.**
- 02 **The signal face for freeway entrance ramp control signals shall be either a two-section signal face containing red and green signal indications or a three-section signal face containing red, yellow, and green signal indications.**
- 03 **If only one lane is present on an entrance ramp or if more than one lane is present on an entrance ramp and the ramp control signals are operated such that green signal indications are always displayed simultaneously to all of the lanes on the ramp, then a minimum of two signal faces per ramp shall face entering traffic .**
- 04 **If more than one lane is present on an entrance ramp and the ramp control signals are operated such that green signal indications are not always displayed simultaneously to all of the lanes on the ramp, then one signal face shall be provided over the approximate center of each separately-controlled lane.**

Guidance:

- 05 *Additional side-mounted signal faces should be considered for ramps with two or more separately-controlled lanes.*

Standard:

- 06 **Ramp control signals shall be located and designed to minimize their viewing by mainline freeway traffic .**

Option:

- 07 Ramp control signals may be placed in the dark mode (no indications displayed) when not in use.
- 08 Ramp control signals may be used to control some, but not all, lanes on a ramp, such as when non-metered HOV bypass lanes are provided on a ramp.
- 09 The required signal faces, if located at the side of the ramp roadway, may be mounted such that the height above the pavement grade at the center of the ramp roadway to the bottom of the signal housing of the lowest signal face is between 4.5 and 6 feet.
- 10 For entrance ramps with only one controlled lane, the two required signal faces may both be mounted at the side of the roadway on a single pole, with one face at the normal mounting height and one face mounted lower as provided in Paragraph 9, as a specific exception to the normal 8-foot minimum lateral separation of signal faces required by Section 4D.13.

Guidance:

- 11 *Regulatory signs with legends appropriate to the control, such as XX VEHICLE(S) PER GREEN or XX VEHICLE(S) PER GREEN EACH LANE (see Section 2B.56), should be installed adjacent to the ramp control signal faces. When ramp control signals are installed on a freeway-to-freeway ramp, special consideration should be given to assuring adequate visibility of the ramp control signals, and multiple advance warning signs with flashing warning beacons should be installed to warn road users of the metered operation.*

Section 4L.03 Operation of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals*Guidance:*

- 01 *Operational strategies for ramp control signals, such as periods of operation, metering rates and algorithms, and queue management, should be determined by the operating agency prior to the installation of the ramp control signals and should be closely monitored and adjusted as needed thereafter.*
- 02 *When the ramp control signals are operated only during certain periods of the day, a RAMP METERED WHEN FLASHING (W3-8) sign (see Section 2C.37) should be installed in advance of the ramp control signal near the entrance to the ramp, or on the arterial on the approach to the ramp, to alert road users to the presence and operation of ramp meters.*

Standard:

- 03 **The RAMP METERED WHEN FLASHING sign shall be supplemented with a warning beacon (see Section 4L.03) that flashes when the ramp control signal is in operation.**

CHAPTER 4J. TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR MOVABLE BRIDGES

Section 4J.01 Application of Traffic Control for Movable Bridges

Support:

- 01 Traffic control signals for movable bridges are a special type of highway traffic signal installed at movable bridges to notify road users to stop because of a road closure rather than alternately giving the right-of-way to conflicting traffic movements. The signals are operated in coordination with the opening and closing of the movable bridge, and with the operation of movable bridge warning and resistance gates, or other devices and features used to warn, control, and stop traffic.
- 02 Movable bridge warning gates installed at movable bridges decrease the likelihood of vehicles and pedestrians passing the stop line and entering an area where potential hazards exist because of bridge operations.
- 03 A movable bridge resistance gate is sometimes used at movable bridges and located downstream of the movable bridge warning gate. A movable bridge resistance gate provides a physical deterrent to road users when placed in the appropriate position. The movable bridge resistance gates are considered a design feature and not a traffic control device; requirements for them are contained in AASHTO's "Standard Specifications for Movable Highway Bridges" (see Page i for AASHTO's address).

Standard:

- 04 **Traffic control at movable bridges shall include both signals and gates, except in the following cases:**
- A. **Neither is required if other traffic control devices or measures considered appropriate are used under either of the following conditions:**
 - 1. **On low-volume roads (roads of less than 400 vehicles average daily traffic), or**
 - 2. **At manually operated bridges if electric power is not available.**
 - B. **Only signals are required in urban areas if intersecting streets or driveways make gates ineffective.**
 - C. **Only movable bridge warning gates are required if a traffic control signal that is controlled as part of the bridge operations exists within 500 feet of the movable bridge resistance gates and no intervening traffic entrances exist.**

Section 4J.02 Design and Location of Movable Bridge Signals and Gates

Standard:

- 01 **The signal faces and mountings of movable bridge signals shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4D except as provided in this Section.**
- 02 **Signal faces with 12-inch diameter signal indications shall be used for all new movable bridge signals.**
- Option:
- 03 Existing signal faces with 8-inch diameter lenses may be retained for the remainder of their useful service life.

Standard:

- 04 **Since movable bridge operations cover a variable range of time periods between openings, the signal faces shall be one of the following types:**
- A. **Three-section signal faces with red, yellow, and green signal indications; or**
 - B. **Two one-section signal faces with red signal indications in a vertical array separated by a STOP HERE ON RED (R10-6) sign (see Section 2B.53).**
- 05 **Regardless of which signal type is selected, at least two signal faces shall be provided for each approach to the movable span and a stop line (see Section 3B.16) shall be installed to indicate the point behind which vehicles are required to stop.**

Guidance:

- 06 *If movable bridge operation is frequent, the use of three-section signal faces should be considered.*
- 07 *Insofar as practical, the height and lateral placement of signal faces should comply with the requirements for other traffic control signals in accordance with Chapter 4D. They should be located no more than 50 feet in advance of the movable bridge warning gate.*

Option:

- 08 Movable bridge signals may be supplemented with audible warning devices to provide additional warning to drivers and pedestrians.

Standard:

- 09 **A DRAW BRIDGE (W3-6) sign (see Section 2C.39) shall be used in advance of movable bridge signals and gates to give warning to road users, except in urban conditions where such signing would not be practical.**

- 10 **If physical conditions prevent a road user from having a continuous view of at least two signal indications for the distance specified in Table 4D-2, an auxiliary device (either a supplemental signal face or the mandatory DRAW BRIDGE (W3-6) sign to which has been added a warning beacon that is interconnected with the movable bridge controller unit) shall be provided in advance of movable bridge signals and gates.**

Option:

- 11 The DRAW BRIDGE (W3-6) sign may be supplemented by a Warning Beacon (see Section 4L.03).

Standard:

- 12 **If two sets of gates (both a warning and a resistance gate) are used for a single direction, highway traffic signals shall not be required to accompany the resistance gate nearest the span opening.**

- 13 **Movable bridge warning gates, if used, shall be at least standard railroad size, striped with 16-inch alternate vertical, fully reflectorized red and white stripes. Flashing red lights in accordance with the Standards for those on railroad gates (see Section 8C.04) shall be included on the gate arm and they shall only be operated if the gate is closed or in the process of being opened or closed. In the horizontal position, the top of the gate shall be approximately 4 feet above the pavement.**

Guidance:

- 14 *Movable bridge warning gates should be of lightweight construction. In its normal upright position, the gate arm should provide adequate lateral clearance.*

Option:

- 15 The movable bridge resistance gates may be delineated, if practical, in a manner similar to the movable bridge warning gate.

Standard:

- 16 **Movable bridge warning gates, if used, shall extend at least across the full width of the approach lanes if movable bridge resistance gates are used. On divided highways in which the roadways are separated by a barrier median, movable bridge warning gates, if used, shall extend across all roadway lanes approaching the span openings.**

Guidance:

- 17 *If movable bridge resistance gates are not used on undivided highways, movable bridge warning gates, if used, should extend across the full width of the roadway.*

Option:

- 18 A single full-width gate or two half-width gates may be used.

Support:

- 19 The locations of movable bridge signals and gates are determined by the location of the movable bridge resistance gate (if used) rather than by the location of the movable spans. The movable bridge resistance gates for high-speed highways are preferably located 50 feet or more from the span opening except for bascule and lift bridges, where they are often attached to, or are a part of, the structure.

Standard:

- 20 **Except where physical conditions make it impractical, movable bridge warning gates shall be located 100 feet or more from the movable bridge resistance gates or, if movable bridge resistance gates are not used, 100 feet or more from the movable span.**

Guidance:

- 21 *On bridges or causeways that cross a long reach of water and that might be hit by large marine vessels, within the limits of practicality, traffic should not be halted on a section of the bridge or causeway that is subject to impact.*

- 22 *In cases where it is not practical to halt traffic on a span that is not subject to impact, traffic should be halted at least one span from the opening. If traffic is halted by signals and gates more than 330 feet from the movable bridge warning gates (or from the span opening if movable bridge warning gates are not used), a second set of gates should be installed approximately 100 feet from the gate or span opening.*

- 23 *If the movable bridge is close to a grade crossing and traffic might possibly be stopped on the crossing as a result of the bridge opening, a traffic control device should notify the road users to not stop on the railroad tracks.*

Section 4J.03 Operation of Movable Bridge Signals and Gates**Standard:**

- 01 Traffic control devices at movable bridges shall be coordinated with the movable spans, so that the signals, gates, and movable spans are controlled by the bridge tender through an interlocked control.
- 02 If the three-section type of signal face is used, the green signal indication shall be displayed at all times between bridge openings, except that if the bridge is not expected to open during continuous periods in excess of 5 hours, a flashing yellow signal indication shall be permitted to be used. The signal shall display a steady red signal indication when traffic is required to stop. The duration of the yellow change interval between the display of the green and steady red signal indications, or flashing yellow and steady red signal indications, shall be determined using engineering practices (see Section 4D.26).
- 03 If the vertical array of red signal indications is the type of signal face selected, the red signal indications shall flash alternately only when traffic is required to stop.

Guidance:

- 04 The yellow change interval should have a minimum duration of 3 seconds and a maximum duration of 6 seconds. The longer intervals should be reserved for use on approaches with higher speeds.
- 05 Traffic control signals on adjacent streets and highways should be interconnected with the drawbridge control if indicated by engineering judgment. When such interconnection is provided, the traffic control signals at adjacent intersections should be preempted by the operation of the movable bridge in the manner described in Section 4D.27.

CHAPTER 4K. HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS AT TOLL PLAZAS

Section 4K.01 Traffic Signals at Toll Plazas

Standard:

- 01 Traffic control signals or devices that closely resemble traffic control signals that use red or green circular indications shall not be used at toll plazas to indicate the open or closed status of the toll plaza lanes.

Guidance:

- 02 Traffic control signals or devices that closely resemble traffic control signals that use red or green circular indications should not be used for new or reconstructed installations at toll plazas to indicate the success or failure of electronic toll payments or to alternately direct drivers making cash toll payments to stop and then proceed.

Section 4K.02 Lane-Use Control Signals at or Near Toll Plazas

Standard:

- 01 Lane-use control signals used at toll plazas shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4M except as otherwise provided in this Section.
- 02 At toll plazas with multiple lanes where one or more lanes is sometimes closed to traffic, a lane-use control signal shall be installed above the center of each toll plaza lane to indicate the open or closed status of the controlled lane.

Option:

- 03 The bottom of the signal housing of a lane-use control signal above a toll plaza lane having a canopy may be mounted lower than 15 feet above the pavement, but not lower than the vertical clearance of the canopy structure.
- 04 Lane-use control signals may also be used to indicate the open or closed status of an Open-Road ETC lane as a supplement to other devices used for the temporary closure of a lane (see Part 6).

Section 4K.03 Warning Beacons at Toll Plazas

Standard:

- 01 Warning Beacons used at toll plazas shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4L except as otherwise provided in this Section.

Guidance:

- 02 Warning Beacons, if used with a toll plaza canopy sign (see Section 2F.16) to assist drivers of such vehicles in locating the dedicated ETC Account-Only lane(s), should be installed in a manner such that the beacons are distinctly separate from the lane-use control signals (see Section 4M.01) for the toll plaza lane.

Option:

- 03 Warning Beacons that are mounted on toll plaza islands, behind impact attenuators in front of toll plaza islands, and/or on toll booth pylons (ramparts) to identify them as objects in the roadway may be mounted at a height that is appropriate for viewing in a toll plaza context, even if that height is lower than the normal minimum of 8 feet above the pavement.

CHAPTER 4L. FLASHING BEACONS

Section 4L.01 General Design and Operation of Flashing Beacons

Support:

- 01 A Flashing Beacon is a highway traffic signal with one or more signal sections that operates in a flashing mode. It can provide traffic control when used as an intersection control beacon (see Section 4L.02) or it can provide warning when used in other applications (see Sections 4L.03, 4L.04, and 4L.05).

Standard:

- 02 **Flashing Beacon units and their mountings shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4D, except as otherwise provided in this Chapter.**
- 03 **Beacons shall be flashed at a rate of not less than 50 or more than 60 times per minute. The illuminated period of each flash shall be a minimum of 1/2 and a maximum of 2/3 of the total cycle.**
- 04 **A beacon shall not be included within the border of a sign except for SCHOOL SPEED LIMIT sign beacons (see Sections 4L.04 and 7B.15).**

Guidance:

- 05 *If used to supplement a warning or regulatory sign, the edge of the beacon signal housing should normally be located no closer than 12 inches outside of the nearest edge of the sign.*

Option:

- 06 An automatic dimming device may be used to reduce the brilliance of flashing yellow signal indications during night operation.

Section 4L.02 Intersection Control Beacon

Standard:

- 01 **An Intersection Control Beacon shall consist of one or more signal faces directed toward each approach to an intersection. Each signal face shall consist of one or more signal sections of a standard traffic signal face, with flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW or CIRCULAR RED signal indications in each signal face. They shall be installed and used only at an intersection to control two or more directions of travel.**
- 02 **Application of Intersection Control Beacon signal indications shall be limited to the following:**
- A. Yellow on one route (normally the major street) and red for the remaining approaches, and
 - B. Red for all approaches (if the warrant described in Section 2B.07 for a multi-way stop is satisfied).
- 03 **Flashing yellow signal indications shall not face conflicting vehicular approaches.**
- 04 **A STOP sign shall be used on approaches to which a flashing red signal indication is displayed on an Intersection Control Beacon (see Section 2B.04).**
- 05 **If two horizontally aligned red signal indications are used on an approach for an Intersection Control Beacon, they shall be flashed simultaneously to avoid being confused with grade crossing flashing-light signals. If two vertically aligned red signal indications are used on an approach for an Intersection Control Beacon, they shall be flashed alternately.**

Guidance:

- 06 *An Intersection Control Beacon should not be mounted on a pedestal in the roadway unless the pedestal is within the confines of a traffic or pedestrian island.*

Option:

- 07 Supplemental signal indications may be used on one or more approaches in order to provide adequate visibility to approaching road users.
- 08 Intersection Control Beacons may be used at intersections where traffic or physical conditions do not justify conventional traffic control signals but crash rates indicate the possibility of a special need.
- 09 An Intersection Control Beacon is generally located over the center of an intersection; however, it may be used at other suitable locations.

Section 4L.03 Warning Beacon

Support:

- 01 Typical applications of Warning Beacons include the following:
- A. At obstructions in or immediately adjacent to the roadway;
 - B. As supplemental emphasis to warning signs;
 - C. As emphasis for midblock crosswalks;

- D. As supplemental emphasis to regulatory signs, except STOP, DO NOT ENTER, WRONG WAY, and SPEED LIMIT signs; and
- E. In conjunction with a regulatory or warning sign that includes the phrase WHEN FLASHING in its legend to indicate that the regulation is in effect or that the condition is present only at certain times.

Standard:

- 02 **A Warning Beacon shall consist of one or more signal sections of a standard traffic signal face with a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication in each signal section.**
- 03 **A Warning Beacon shall be used only to supplement an appropriate warning or regulatory sign or marker.**
- 04 **Warning Beacons, if used at intersections, shall not face conflicting vehicular approaches.**
- 05 **If a Warning Beacon is suspended over the roadway, the clearance above the pavement shall be a minimum of 15 feet and a maximum of 19 feet.**

Guidance:

- 06 *The condition or regulation justifying Warning Beacons should largely govern their location with respect to the roadway.*
- 07 *If an obstruction is in or adjacent to the roadway, illumination of the lower portion or the beginning of the obstruction or a sign on or in front of the obstruction, in addition to the beacon, should be considered.*
- 08 *Warning Beacons should be operated only during those periods or times when the condition or regulation exists.*

Option:

- 09 Warning Beacons that are actuated by pedestrians, bicyclists, or other road users may be used as appropriate to provide additional warning to vehicles approaching a crossing or other location.
- 10 If Warning Beacons have more than one signal section, they may be flashed either alternately or simultaneously.
- 11 A flashing yellow beacon interconnected with a traffic signal controller assembly may be used with a traffic signal warning sign (see Section 2C.36).

Section 4L.04 Speed Limit Sign Beacon

Standard:

- 01 **A Speed Limit Sign Beacon shall be used only to supplement a Speed Limit sign.**
- 02 **A Speed Limit Sign Beacon shall consist of one or more signal sections of a standard traffic control signal face, with a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW signal indication in each signal section. The signal indications shall have a nominal diameter of not less than 8 inches. If two signal indications are used, they shall be vertically aligned, except that they shall be permitted to be horizontally aligned if the Speed Limit (R2-1) sign is longer horizontally than vertically. If two signal indications are used, they shall be alternately flashed.**

Option:

- 03 A Speed Limit Sign Beacon may be used with a fixed or variable Speed Limit sign. If applicable, a flashing Speed Limit Sign Beacon (with an appropriate accompanying sign) may be used to indicate that the displayed speed limit is in effect.
- 04 A Speed Limit Sign Beacon may be included within the border of a School Speed Limit (S5-1) sign (see Section 7B.15).

Section 4L.05 Stop Beacon

Standard:

- 01 **A Stop Beacon shall be used only to supplement a STOP sign, a DO NOT ENTER sign, or a WRONG WAY sign.**
- 02 **A Stop Beacon shall consist of one or more signal sections of a standard traffic signal face with a flashing CIRCULAR RED signal indication in each signal section. If two horizontally aligned signal indications are used for a Stop Beacon, they shall be flashed simultaneously to avoid being confused with grade crossing flashing-light signals. If two vertically aligned signal indications are used for a Stop Beacon, they shall be flashed alternately.**
- 03 **The bottom of the signal housing of a Stop Beacon shall be not less than 12 inches or more than 24 inches above the top of a STOP sign, a DO NOT ENTER sign, or a WRONG WAY sign.**

CHAPTER 4M. LANE-USE CONTROL SIGNALS

Section 4M.01 Application of Lane-Use Control Signals

Support:

- 01 Lane-use control signals are special overhead signals that permit or prohibit the use of specific lanes of a street or highway or that indicate the impending prohibition of their use. Lane-use control signals are distinguished by placement of special signal faces over a certain lane or lanes of the roadway and by their distinctive shapes and symbols. Supplementary signs are sometimes used to explain their meaning and intent.
- 02 Lane-use control signals are most commonly used for reversible-lane control, but are also used in certain non-reversible lane applications and for toll plaza lanes (see Section 4K.02).

Guidance:

- 03 *An engineering study should be conducted to determine whether a reversible-lane operation can be controlled satisfactorily by static signs (see Section 2B.26) or whether lane-use control signals are necessary. Lane-use control signals should be used to control reversible-lane operations if any of the following conditions are present:*
- A. *More than one lane is reversed in direction;*
 - B. *Two-way or one-way left turns are allowed during peak-period reversible operations, but those turns are from a different lane than used during off-peak periods;*
 - C. *Other unusual or complex operations are included in the reversible-lane pattern;*
 - D. *Demonstrated crash experience occurring with reversible-lane operation controlled by static signs that can be corrected by using lane-use control signals at the times of transition between peak and off-peak patterns; and/or*
 - E. *An engineering study indicates that the safety and efficiency of the traffic operations of a reversible-lane system would be improved by lane-use control signals.*

Standard:

- 04 **Pavement markings (see Section 3B.03) shall be used in conjunction with reversible-lane control signals.**

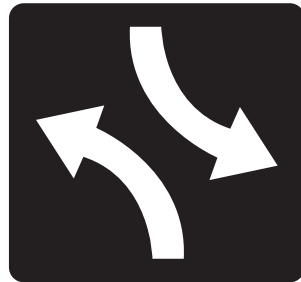
Option:

- 05 Lane-use control signals may also be used if there is no intent or need to reverse lanes, but there is a need to indicate the open or closed status of one or more lanes, such as:
- A. On a freeway, if it is desired to close certain lanes at certain hours to facilitate the merging of traffic from a ramp or other freeway;
 - B. On a freeway, near its terminus, to indicate a lane that ends;
 - C. On a freeway or long bridge, to indicate that a lane may be temporarily blocked by a crash, breakdown, construction or maintenance activities, or similar temporary conditions; and
 - D. On a conventional road or driveway, at access or egress points to or from a facility, such as a parking garage, where one or more lanes of the access or egress are opened or closed at various times.

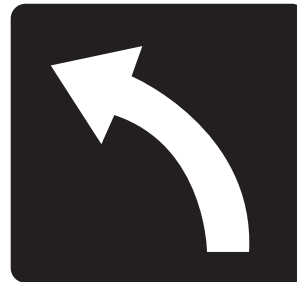
Section 4M.02 Meaning of Lane-Use Control Signal Indications

Standard:

- 01 **The meanings of lane-use control signal indications shall be as follows:**
- A. **A steady DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW signal indication shall mean that a road user is permitted to drive in the lane over which the arrow signal indication is located.**
 - B. **A steady YELLOW X signal indication shall mean that a road user is to prepare to vacate the lane over which the signal indication is located because a lane control change is being made to a steady RED X signal indication.**
 - C. **A steady WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW signal indication (see Figure 4M-1) shall mean that a road user is permitted to use a lane over which the signal indication is located for a left turn, but not for through travel, with the understanding that common use of the lane by oncoming road users for left turns is also permitted.**
 - D. **A steady WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW signal indication (see Figure 4M-1) shall mean that a road user is permitted to use a lane over which the signal indication is located for a left turn (without opposing turns in the same lane), but not for through travel.**
 - E. **A steady RED X signal indication shall mean that a road user is not permitted to use the lane over which the signal indication is located and that this signal indication shall modify accordingly the meaning of other traffic controls present.**

Figure 4M-1. Left-Turn Lane-Use Control Signals

Two-way left-turn arrow



One-way left-turn arrow

White arrows on an opaque 30 x 30-inch background

Section 4M.03 Design of Lane-Use Control Signals

Standard:

- 01 All lane-use control signal indications shall be in units with rectangular signal faces and shall have opaque backgrounds. Nominal minimum height and width of each **DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW**, **YELLOW X**, and **RED X** signal face shall be 18 inches for typical applications. The **WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW** and **WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW** signal faces shall have a nominal minimum height and width of 30 inches.
- 02 Each lane to be reversed or closed shall have signal faces with a **DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW** and a **RED X** symbol.
- 03 Each reversible lane that also operates as a two-way or one-way left-turn lane during certain periods shall have signal faces that also include the applicable **WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW** or **WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW** symbol.
- 04 Each non-reversible lane immediately adjacent to a reversible lane shall have signal indications that display a **DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW** to traffic traveling in the permitted direction and a **RED X** to traffic traveling in the opposite direction.
- 05 If in separate signal sections, the relative positions, from left to right, of the signal indications shall be **RED X**, **YELLOW X**, **DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW**, **WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW**, **WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW**.
- 06 The color of lane-use control signal indications shall be clearly visible for 2,300 feet at all times under normal atmospheric conditions, unless otherwise physically obstructed.
- 07 Lane-use control signal faces shall be located approximately over the center of the lane controlled.
- 08 If the area to be controlled is more than 2,300 feet in length, or if the vertical or horizontal alignment is curved, intermediate lane-use control signal faces shall be located over each controlled lane at frequent intervals. This location shall be such that road users will at all times be able to see at least one signal indication and preferably two along the roadway, and will have a definite indication of the lanes specifically reserved for their use.
- 09 All lane-use control signal faces shall be located in a straight line across the roadway approximately at right angles to the roadway alignment.
- 10 On roadways having intersections controlled by traffic control signals, the lane-use control signal face shall be located sufficiently far in advance of or beyond such traffic control signals to prevent them from being misconstrued as traffic control signals.
- 11 Except as provided in Paragraph 12, the bottom of the signal housing of any lane-use control signal face shall be a minimum of 15 feet and a maximum of 19 feet above the pavement grade.

Option:

- 12 The bottom of a lane-use control signal housing may be lower than 15 feet above the pavement if it is mounted on a canopy or other structure over the pavement, but not lower than the vertical clearance of the structure.
- 13 Except for lane-use control signals at toll plazas (see Section 4K.02), in areas with minimal visual clutter and with speeds of less than 40 mph, lane-use control signal faces with nominal height and width of 12 inches may be used for the **DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW**, **YELLOW X**, and **RED X** signal faces, and lane-use control signal faces with nominal height and width of 18 inches may be used for the **WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW** and **WHITE ONE-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW** signal faces.

- 14 Other sizes of lane-use control signal faces larger than 18 inches with message recognition distances appropriate to signal spacing may be used for the DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW, YELLOW X, and RED X signal faces.
- 15 Non-reversible lanes not immediately adjacent to a reversible lane on any street so controlled may also be provided with signal indications that display a DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW to traffic traveling in the permitted direction and a RED X to traffic traveling in the opposite direction.
- 16 The signal indications provided for each lane may be in separate signal sections or may be superimposed in the same signal section.

Section 4M.04 Operation of Lane-Use Control Signals

Standard:

- 01 All lane-use control signals shall be coordinated so that all the signal indications along the controlled section of roadway are operated uniformly and consistently. The lane-use control signal system shall be designed to reliably guard against showing any prohibited combination of signal indications to any traffic at any point in the controlled lanes.
- 02 For reversible-lane control signals, the following combination of signal indications shall not be simultaneously displayed over the same lane to both directions of travel:
- A. DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW in both directions,
 - B. YELLOW X in both directions,
 - C. WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW in both directions,
 - D. DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW in one direction and YELLOW X in the other direction,
 - E. WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW or WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW in one direction and DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW in the other direction,
 - F. WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW in one direction and WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW in the other direction, and
 - G. WHITE ONE WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW in one direction and YELLOW X in the other direction.
- 03 A moving condition in one direction shall be terminated either by the immediate display of a RED X signal indication or by a YELLOW X signal indication followed by a RED X signal indication. In either case, the duration of the RED X signal indication shall be sufficient to allow clearance of the lane before any moving condition is allowed in the opposing direction.
- 04 Whenever a DOWNWARD GREEN ARROW signal indication is changed to a WHITE TWO-WAY LEFT-TURN ARROW signal indication, the RED X signal indication shall continue to be displayed to the opposite direction of travel for an appropriate duration to allow traffic time to vacate the lane being converted to a two-way left-turn lane.
- 05 If an automatic control system is used, a manual control to override the automatic control shall be provided.

Guidance:

- 06 *The type of control provided for reversible-lane operation should be such as to permit either automatic or manual operation of the lane-use control signals.*

Standard:

- 07 If used, lane-use control signals shall be operated continuously, except that lane-use control signals that are used only for special events or other infrequent occurrences and lane-use control signals on non-reversible freeway lanes shall be permitted to be darkened when not in operation. The change from normal operation to non-operation shall occur only when the lane-use control signals display signal indications that are appropriate for the lane use that applies when the signals are not operated. The lane-use control signals shall display signal indications that are appropriate for the existing lane use when changed from non-operation to normal operations. Also, traffic control devices shall clearly indicate the proper lane use when the lane control signals are not in operation.

Support:

- 08 Section 2B.26 contains additional information concerning considerations involving left-turn prohibitions in conjunction with reversible-lane operations.

CHAPTER 4N. IN-ROADWAY LIGHTS

Section 4N.01 Application of In-Roadway Lights

Support:

- 01 In-Roadway Lights are special types of highway traffic signals installed in the roadway surface to warn road users that they are approaching a condition on or adjacent to the roadway that might not be readily apparent and might require the road users to slow down and/or come to a stop. This includes situations warning of marked school crosswalks, marked midblock crosswalks, marked crosswalks on uncontrolled approaches, marked crosswalks in advance of roundabouts as described in Chapter 3C, and other roadway situations involving pedestrian crossings.

Standard:

- 02 **In-Roadway Lights shall not be used for any application that is not described in this Chapter.**
 03 **If used, In-Roadway Lights shall not exceed a height of 3/4 inch above the roadway surface.**
 04 **When used, In-Roadway Lights shall be flashed and shall not be steadily illuminated.**

Support:

- 05 Steadily illuminated lights installed in the roadway surface are considered to be internally illuminated raised pavement markers (see Section 3B.11).

Option:

- 06 In-Roadway Lights may be flashed in a manner that includes a continuous flash of varying intensity and time duration that is repeated to provide a flickering effect (see Section 4N.02).

Section 4N.02 In-Roadway Warning Lights at Crosswalks

Option:

- 01 In-roadway lights may be installed at certain marked crosswalks, based on an engineering study or engineering judgment, to provide additional warning to road users.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, In-Roadway Warning Lights at crosswalks shall be installed only at marked crosswalks with applicable warning signs. They shall not be used at crosswalks controlled by YIELD signs, STOP signs, or traffic control signals.**
- 03 **If In-Roadway Warning Lights are used at a crosswalk, the following requirements shall apply:**
- A. **Except as provided in Paragraphs 7 and 8, they shall be installed along both sides of the crosswalk and shall span its entire length.**
 - B. **They shall initiate operation based on pedestrian actuation and shall cease operation at a predetermined time after the pedestrian actuation or, with passive detection, after the pedestrian clears the crosswalk.**
 - C. **They shall display a flashing yellow light when actuated. The flash rate shall be at least 50, but no more than 60, flash periods per minute. If they are flashed in a manner that includes a continuous flash of varying intensity and time duration that is repeated to provide a flickering effect, the flickers or pulses shall not repeat at a rate that is between 5 and 30 per second to avoid frequencies that might cause seizures.**
 - D. **They shall be installed in the area between the outside edge of the crosswalk line and 10 feet from the outside edge of the crosswalk.**
 - E. **They shall face away from the crosswalk if unidirectional, or shall face away from and across the crosswalk if bidirectional.**
- 04 **If used on one-lane, one-way roadways, a minimum of two In-Roadway Warning Lights shall be installed on the approach side of the crosswalk. If used on two-lane roadways, a minimum of three In-Roadway Warning Lights shall be installed along both sides of the crosswalk. If used on roadways with more than two lanes, a minimum of one In-Roadway Warning Light per lane shall be installed along both sides of the crosswalk.**

Guidance:

- 05 *If used, In-Roadway Warning Lights should be installed in the center of each travel lane, at the center line of the roadway, at each edge of the roadway or parking lanes, or at other suitable locations away from the normal tire track paths.*
- 06 *The location of the In-Roadway Warning Lights within the lanes should be based on engineering judgment.*

Option:

- 07 On one-way streets, In-Roadway Warning Lights may be omitted on the departure side of the crosswalk.
- 08 Based on engineering judgment, the In-Roadway Warning Lights on the departure side of the crosswalk on the left side of a median may be omitted.
- 09 Unidirectional In-Roadway Warning Lights installed at crosswalk locations may have an optional, additional yellow light indication in each unit that is visible to pedestrians in the crosswalk to indicate to pedestrians in the crosswalk that the In-Roadway Warning Lights are in fact flashing as they cross the street. These yellow lights may flash with and at the same flash rate as the light module in which each is installed.

Guidance:

- 10 *If used, the period of operation of the In-Roadway Warning Lights following each actuation should be sufficient to allow a pedestrian crossing in the crosswalk to leave the curb or shoulder and travel at a walking speed of 3.5 feet per second to at least the far side of the traveled way or to a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait. Where pedestrians who walk slower than 3.5 feet per second, or pedestrians who use wheelchairs, routinely use the crosswalk, a walking speed of less than 3.5 feet per second should be considered in determining the period of operation.*

Standard:

- 11 **If pedestrian pushbuttons are used to actuate the in-roadway lights, a Push Button To Turn On Warning Lights (with pushbutton symbol) (R10-25) sign (see Figure 2B-26) shall be mounted adjacent to or integral with each pedestrian pushbutton.**
- 12 **Where the period of operation is sufficient only for crossing from a curb or shoulder to a median of sufficient width for pedestrians to wait, median-mounted pedestrian actuators shall be provided.**

(This page left intentionally blank)